

JC10 Rec'd 23 JAN 2002

FORM PTO 1390
(REV 5-99)

US DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER
2002-0068A

TRANSMITTAL LETTER TO THE UNITED STATES
DESIGNATED/ELECTED OFFICE (DO/EO/US)
CONCERNING A FILING UNDER 35 U.S.C. §371

U.S. APPLICATION NO.
(if known, see 37 CFR 1.55)
[NEW] 10/031716

International Application No.
PCT/JP00/04762

International Filing Date
July 14, 2000

Priority Date Claimed
July 23, 1999

Title of Invention
NOVEL AMIDE DERIVATIVES

Applicant(s) For DO/EO/US

Yufu SAGARA; Minaho UCHIYAMA; Akira NAYA; Toshifumi KIMURA; Tomoshige NUMAZAWA; Toru FUJIKAWA;
Norikazu OTAKI; Kazuhito NOGUCHI

Applicant herewith submits to the United States Designated/Elected Office (DO/EO/US) the following items and other information:

1. ☒ This is a **FIRST** submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. §371.
2. ☐ This is a **SECOND** or **SUBSEQUENT** submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. §371.
3. ☒ This express request to begin national examination procedures (35 U.S.C. §371(f)) at any time rather than delay examination until the expiration of the applicable time limit set in 35 U.S.C. §371(b) and PCT Articles 22 and 39(1).
4. ☒ A proper Demand for International Preliminary Examination was made by the 19th month from the earliest claimed priority date.
5. ☒ A copy of the International Application as filed (35 U.S.C. §371(c)(2))
 - a. ☐ is transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International Bureau).
 - b. ☒ has been transmitted by the International Bureau.
 - c. ☐ is not required, as the application was filed in the United States Receiving Office (RO/US)
6. ☒ A translation of the International Application into English (35 U.S.C. §371(c)(2)). **ATTACHMENT A**
7. ☐ Amendments to the claims of the International Application under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. §371(c)(3)).
 - a. ☐ are transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International Bureau).
 - b. ☐ have been transmitted by the International Bureau.
 - c. ☐ have not been made; however, the time limit for making such amendments has NOT expired.
 - d. ☐ have not been made and will not be made.
8. ☐ A translation of the amendments to the claims under PCT Article 19.
9. ☒ An **unexecuted** oath or declaration of the inventor(s) (35 U.S.C. §371(c)(4)). **ATTACHMENT B**
10. ☐ A translation of the annexes to the International Preliminary Examination Report under PCT Article 36 (35 U.S.C. §371(c)(5)).

Items 11. to 14. below concern other document(s) or information included:

11. ☒ An Information Disclosure Statement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. **ATTACHMENT C**
12. ☐ An assignment document for recording. A separate cover sheet in compliance with 37 CFR 3.28 and 3.31 is included.
13. ☐ A **FIRST** preliminary amendment.

☐ A **SECOND** or **SUBSEQUENT** preliminary amendment.
14. ☒ Other items or information:
 - a. Cover Page of Published International Application No. WO01/07406 - **ATTACHMENT D**
 - b. International Search Report - **ATTACHMENT E**

U.S. APPLICATION NO. 10/031716 <small>(If known, use 37 CFR 1.51)</small> [NEW]		INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO. PCT/JP00/04762		ATTORNEY'S DOCKET NO. 2002-0068A	
---	--	--	--	--	--

15. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The following fees are submitted BASIC NATIONAL FEE (37 CFR 1.492(a)(1)-(5)): Neither international preliminary examination fee nor international search fee paid to USPTO and International Search Report not prepared by the EPO or JPO \$1040.00 International Search Report has been prepared by the EPO or JPO \$ 890.00 International preliminary examination fee not paid to USPTO but international search paid to USPTO \$ 740.00 International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO but claims did not satisfy provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4) \$ 690.00 International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO and all claims satisfied provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4) \$ 100.00 ENTER APPROPRIATE BASIC FEE AMOUNT =				<table border="1" style="width:100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th style="width:50%;">CALCULATIONS</th> <th style="width:50%;">PTO USE ONLY</th> </tr> <tr> <td style="height: 100px;"></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">\$ 890.00</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		CALCULATIONS	PTO USE ONLY			\$ 890.00	
CALCULATIONS	PTO USE ONLY										
\$ 890.00											


Surcharge of \$130.00 for furnishing the oath or declaration later than [] 20 [] 30 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(e)).					
Claims	Number Filed	Number Extra	Rate		
Total Claims	76 -20 =	56	X \$18.00	\$1,008.00	
Independent Claims	6 -3 =	3	X \$84.00	\$ 252.00	
Multiple dependent claim(s) (if applicable)			+ \$280.00	\$ 280.00	
TOTAL OF ABOVE CALCULATIONS =				\$2,430.00	
[] Small Entity Status is hereby asserted. Above fees are reduced by 1/2.					
SUBTOTAL =				\$2,430.00	
Processing fee of \$130.00 for furnishing the English translation later than [] 20 [] 30 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(f)).					
TOTAL NATIONAL FEE =				\$2,430.00	
Fee for recording the enclosed assignment (37 CFR 1.21(h)). The assignment must be accompanied by an appropriate cover sheet (37 CFR 3.28, 3.31). \$40 per property +					
TOTAL FEES ENCLOSED =				\$2,430.00	
				Amount to be refunded	\$
				Amount to be charged	\$

a. ☒ A check in the amount of \$ 2,430.00 to cover the above fees is enclosed. A duplicate copy of this form is enclosed.

b. ☐ Please charge my Deposit Account No. 23-0975 in the amount of \$ _____ to cover the above fees.
 A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.

c. ☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 23-0975.

NOTE: Where an appropriate time limit under 37 CFR 1.494 or 1.495 has not been met, a petition to revive (37 CFR 1.137(a) or (b)) must be filed and granted to restore the application to pending status.

19. CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS <div style="text-align: center;">  000513 PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE </div>	By: <u>Matthew Jacob</u> Matthew Jacob, Registration No. 25,154 WENDEROTH, LIND & PONACK, L.L.P. 2033 "K" Street, N.W., Suite 800 Washington, D.C. 20006-1021 Phone: (202) 721-8200 Fax: (202) 721-8250 January 23, 2002
--	--

[CHECK NO. 40486]

[2002-0068A]

DESCRIPTION

NOVEL AMIDE DERIVATIVES5 **Technical Field**

This invention relates to novel amide derivatives, processes for preparing them, pharmaceuticals containing them and their use as medicines, especially in the treatment of various diseases of the respiratory, urinary and digestive systems.

10

Background Art

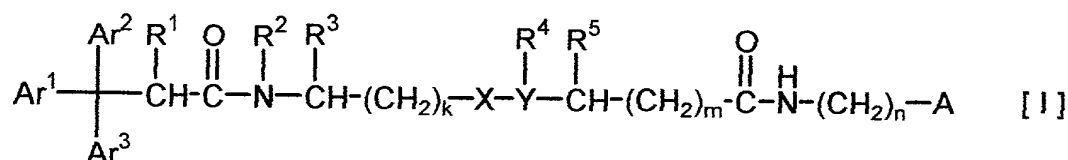
Antagonism to muscarinic receptors are known to cause bronchodilation, gastrointestinal hypanakinesis, gastric hyposecretion, dry mouth, mydriasis, suppression of bladder contraction, hypohidrosis, tachycardia and the like [cf. Basic and Clinical Pharmacology, 4th ed., APPLETON & LANGE, pp. 83-92 (1989) and Drug News & Perspective, 5(6), pp. 345-352 (1992)].

It has recently been made clear that there are at least three subtypes of muscarinic receptors; M₁ receptors being present mainly in the brain; M₂ receptors, mainly in the heart, and M₃ receptors, on smooth muscles and glandular tissues. Whereas, all of the large number of compounds heretofore known to exhibit antagonism to muscarinic receptors non-selectively antagonize the three subtypes of muscarinic receptors. Consequently, attempts to use these compounds as therapeutic or prophylactic agents for diseases of the respiratory system have caused undesirable side effects such as dry mouth, nausea and mydriasis. Still in addition, particularly serious side effects associated with the central nervous system, such as dementia, attributable to M₁ receptors and those associated with the heart, such as tachycardia mediated by M₂ receptors pose problems and their solution has been strongly in demand.

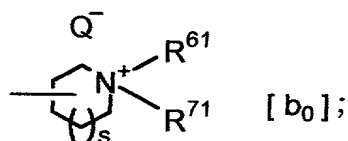
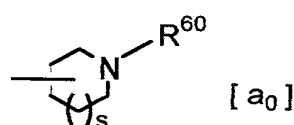
Disclosure of the Invention

An object of the present invention is to provide treating agents of diseases associated with muscarinic M₃ receptors, said agents exhibiting highly selective antagonism to muscarinic M₃ receptors and little side effects, and being safe and effective.

We have discovered that those compounds which are represented by the following general formula [I]



[in which A stands for a group of the following formula [a₀] or [b₀]



Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ each independently stands for optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl; k means 0 or 1; m, n and s each independently means 0, 1 or 2; R¹ stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl; R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower

alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl, or R^2 and R^3 , or R^4 and R^5 ,
may together stand for, independently of each other,
optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene,
tetramethylene or 2-butenylene group, the substituent being
selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino,
lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower
alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino,
lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino,
lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl,
carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl,
imidazolyl and a group represented by $-R^7$, R^7 standing for
optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being
selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino,
carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl,
lower alkoxycarbonyl and imidazolyl; R^{60} stands for hydrogen,
 C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl
whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl,
cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; R^{61} and R^{71} each
independently stands for C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl,
cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be
substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or
aralkyl, or R^{61} and R^{71} may together stand for optionally
substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene,
pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2, 3-epoxytetra-
methylene group, the substituent being selected from the
group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower
alkoxy; X stands for carbonyl or methylene; Y stands for
nitrogen or methine; and Q^- stands for anion]

exhibit highly selective antagonism to muscarinic M_3 receptors, little
side effect and high safety, and are very useful for treating various
diseases which are associated with muscarinic M_3 receptors, eg., such
respiratory diseases as chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases,
chronic bronchitis, asthma, chronic respiratory tract obstruction,

fibroid lung, pulmonary emphysema and rhinitis; digestive diseases such as irritable bowel syndrome, convulsive colitis, gastroduodenal ulcer, convulsion or hyperanakinesia of digestive tract, diverticulitis and pain accompanying contraction of smooth muscles of the digestive system; urinary diseases accompanied by dysuria like urinary incontinence, urgency and pollakiuria in nervous pollakiuria, neurogenic bladder, nocturnal enuresis, unstable bladder, cystospasm and chronic cystitis; and motion sickness; and have completed the present invention.

The present invention relates to the compounds represented by above general formula [I] or salts thereof, processes for their preparation and their use.

Hereafter the invention is explained in further details, in which the terms used mean the following.

"Halogen" means fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine atoms.

"Lower alkyl" means C_1 - C_6 linear or branched alkyl groups, examples of which include methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, hexyl and isohexyl groups.

"Lower alkenyl" means C_2 - C_6 linear or branched alkenyl groups, examples of which include vinyl, 1-propenyl, 2-propenyl, isopropenyl, 3-butenyl, 2-butenyl, 1-butenyl, 1-methyl-2-propenyl, 1-methyl-1-propenyl, 1-ethyl-1-ethenyl, 2-methyl-2-propenyl, 2-methyl-1-propenyl, 3-methyl-2-butenyl and 4-pentenyl groups.

"Lower alkoxy" means C_1 - C_6 linear or branched alkoxy groups, examples of which include methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, sec-butoxy, isobutoxy, tert-butoxy, pentyloxy, isopentyloxy, hexyloxy and isohexyloxy groups.

"Lower alkylcarbamoyl" means carbamoyl groups which are mono-substituted with said lower alkyl groups, examples of which include methylcarbamoyl, ethylcarbamoyl, propylcarbamoyl, isopropylcarbamoyl, butylcarbamoyl, sec-butylcarbamoyl and

tert-butylcarbamoyl groups.

“Di-lower alkylcarbamoyl” means carbamoyl groups which are di-substituted with said lower alkyl groups, examples of which include dimethylcarbamoyl, diethylcarbamoyl, ethylmethylcarbamoyl, 5 dipropylcarbamoyl, methylpropylcarbamoyl and di-isopropylcarbamoyl groups.

“Lower alkylamino” means amino groups which are mono-substituted with said lower alkyl groups, examples of which include methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, isopropylamino, 10 butylamino, sec-butylamino and tert-butylamino groups.

“Di-lower alkylamino” means amino groups which are di-substituted with said lower alkyl groups, examples of which include dimethylamino, diethylamino, ethylmethylamino, dipropylamino, methylpropylamino and di-isopropylamino groups. 15

“Imino-lower alkyl” means said lower alkyl groups which are mono-substituted with imino group, examples of which include formimidoyl, acetimidoyl, propanimidoyl, butanimidoyl, pentanimidoyl and hexanimidoyl groups.

“(Imino-lower alkyl) amino” means amino groups which are mono-substituted with said imino-lower alkyl groups, examples of which include formimidoylamino, acetimidoylamino, 20 propanimidoylamino, butanimidoylamino, pentanimidoylamino and hexanimidoylamino groups.

“Lower alkanoyl” means C₁-C₆ linear or branched alkanoyl groups, examples of which include formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, valeryl, isovaleryl and pivaloyl groups. 25

“Lower alkanoyloxy” means alkanoyloxy groups having said lower alkanoyl groups, examples of which include acetoxy, propionyloxy, butyryloxy, isobutyryloxy, valeryloxy, isovaleryloxy and 30 pivaloyloxy groups.

“Lower alkanoylamino” means amino groups which are mono-substituted with said lower alkanoyl groups, examples of which include formylamino, acetylamino, propionylamino, butyrylamino,

isobutyrylamino, valerylamino, isovalerylamino and pivaloylamino groups.

“(Lower alkylcarbamoyl) amino” means amino groups which are mono-substituted with said lower alkylcarbamoyl groups, examples of which include (methylcarbamoyl) amino, (ethylcarbamoyl)amino, (propylcarbamoyl)amino, (isopropylcarbamoyl)amino, (butylcarbamoyl)amino, (sec-butylcarbamoyl)amino and (tert-butylcarbamoyl)amino groups.

“(Lower alkylsulfonyl)” means alkylsulfonyl groups having said lower alkyl groups, examples of which include methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, propylsulfonyl, isopropylsulfonyl, butylsulfonyl, sec-butylsulfonyl and tert-butylsulfonyl groups.

“(Lower alkylsulfonylamino)” means amino groups which are mono-substituted with said lower alkylsulfonyl groups, examples of which include methylsulfonylamino, ethylsulfonylamino, propylsulfonylamino, isopropylsulfonylamino, butylsulfonylamino, sec-butylsulfonylamino and tert-butylsulfonylamino groups.

“(Lower alkoxycarbonyl)” means alkoxycarbonyl groups having said lower alkoxy groups, examples of which include methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, isobutoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl and pentyloxycarbonyl groups.

“(Lower alkoxycarbonylamino)” means amino groups which are mono-substituted with said lower alkoxycarbonyl groups, examples of which include methoxycarbonylamino, ethoxycarbonylamino, propoxycarbonylamino, isopropoxycarbonylamino, butoxycarbonylamino, isobutoxycarbonylamino, tert-butoxycarbonylamino and pentyloxycarbonylamino groups.

“(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)” means C₁-C₁₀ linear or branched alkyl groups, examples of which includes, besides those earlier exemplified lower alkyl groups, 2-methylbutyl, 2-ethylbutyl, 2-methylpentyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl and decyl groups.

“(Cycloalkyl)” means C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl groups, examples of

which include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, cyclononyl and cyclodecyl groups.

“Cycloalkyl-lower alkyl” means said lower alkyl groups having above cycloalkyl groups, examples of which include
5 cyclopropylmethyl, 2-cyclopropylethyl, cyclobutylmethyl, cyclopentylmethyl, 1-cyclopentylethyl, 2-cyclopentylethyl, cyclohexylmethyl, 1-cyclohexylethyl, 2-cyclohexylethyl, cycloheptylmethyl and cyclooctylmethyl groups.

“Cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be
10 substituted with lower alkyl” means either above cycloalkyl-lower alkyl groups or said cycloalkyl-lower alkyl groups having one, two or more, preferably one or two same or different, earlier named lower alkyl groups at the optional, substitutable position or positions on the cycloalkyl group, examples of which include, besides above-
15 exemplified cycloalkyl-lower alkyl groups, 1-(1-methylcyclopropyl)ethyl, 2-(1-methylcyclopropyl)ethyl, (2,2-dimethylcyclopentyl)methyl, 1-(2,2-dimethylcyclopentyl)ethyl and 2-(2,2-dimethylcyclopentyl)ethyl groups.

“Cycloalkenyl” means C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkenyl groups, examples
20 of which include cyclopropenyl, cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, cyclooctenyl, cyclononenyl and cyclodecenyl groups.

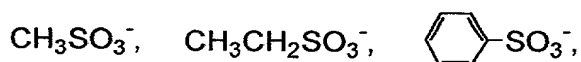
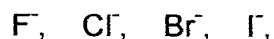
“Cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl” means said lower alkyl groups having said cycloalkenyl groups, examples of which include
25 cyclopropenylmethyl, cyclobutenylmethyl, cyclopentenylmethyl, cyclohexenylmethyl, cycloheptenylmethyl, cyclooctenylmethyl, cyclononenylmethyl and cyclodecenylmethyl groups.

“Aralkyl” means said lower alkyl groups having aryl groups such as phenyl, naphthyl or anthryl, examples of which include benzyl,
30 1-phenylethyl, 2-phenylethyl, 1-naphthylmethyl and 2-naphthylmethyl groups.

“Anion” means those forming a pair with ammonium ions on the compounds of the present invention, which electrically neutralize

said compounds. While they are not subject to particular limitations so long as they are pharmaceutically acceptable, anions formed from halogen atoms, inorganic acids, organic sulfonic acids, carboxylic acids and the like, such as

5



may be named as examples.

10 "Salts" of the compounds represented by the general formula [I] means, for example, those pharmaceutically acceptable and customarily used salts of the compounds whose A is expressed by the formula [a₀], referring to the general formula [I]. As examples of such salts, acid addition salts at the positions of basic nitrogen atom may be named.

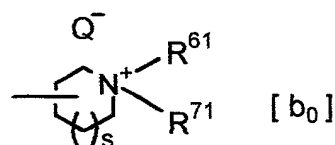
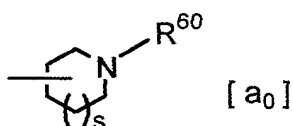
15 Examples of the acid addition salts include inorganic acid salts such as hydrochloride, sulfate, nitrate, phosphate and perchlorate; organic acid salts such as maleate, fumarate, tartarate, citrate, ascorbate and trifluoroacetate; and sulfonic acid salts such as methanesulfonate, isethionate, benzenesulfonate and p-toluene-
20 sulfonate.

"Treating agent" means medicines which are used for treatment and/or prophylaxis of various diseases.

The compounds of the present invention in occasions have stereoisomers such as optical isomers, diastereoisomers or
25 geometrical isomers, depending on the form of the substituents therein. The compounds of the present invention cover all of those stereoisomers and their mixtures.

For more specific disclosures of the compounds of the present invention which are represented by the general formula [I], the symbols used in said formula [I] are explained in further details in the following, citing their preferred specific examples.

5 A stands for a group of the following formula [a₀] or [b₀]:



R⁶⁰ stands for hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl.

Examples of C₁-C₁₀ alkyl groups as R⁶⁰ include methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutyl, hexyl, 2-methylpentyl, heptyl, octyl and decyl.

15 Preferred examples of lower alkenyl group as R⁶⁰ include 2-propenyl and 3-butenyl.

Preferred examples of cycloalkyl group as R⁶⁰ include cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl.

Preferred examples of cycloalkyl-lower alkyl group whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl as R⁶⁰ include cyclopropylmethyl, cyclobutylmethyl, 2-(1-methylcyclopropyl)ethyl, cyclopentylmethyl, (2,2-dimethylcyclopentyl)methyl, 1-cyclopentyl-ethyl, cyclohexylmethyl and 1-cyclohexylethyl.

25 Preferred examples of cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl group as R⁶⁰ include cycloheptenyl and cyclononenyl.

Preferred examples of aralkyl group as R⁶⁰ include benzyl.

Preferred examples of R⁶⁰ include hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, cycloalkyl and cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl.

30 R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ each independently stands for C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be

substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; or R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ may together stand for optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene group, the
5 substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy.

Preferred examples of C₁-C₁₀ alkyl groups as R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ include C₁-C₆ alkyl, in particular, methyl, ethyl, propyl and 2-methylbutyl.

10 Preferred examples of lower alkenyl as R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ include 2-propenyl and 3-butenyl.

Preferred example of cycloalkyl as R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ is cyclohexyl.

Preferred examples of cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl as R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ include
15 cyclopropylmethyl, cyclohexylmethyl, cycloheptylmethyl and cyclooctylmethyl, in particular, cyclopropylmethyl and cyclohexylmethyl, inter alia, cyclopropylmethyl.

Preferred examples of cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl as R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ include cycloheptenylmethyl and cyclononenylmethyl.

20 Preferred examples of aralkyl as R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ include benzyl.

"Trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy" means unsubstituted
25 trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene; or those having one, two or more, preferably one or two substituents which may be same or different, which are selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy, at optional substitutable
30 position or positions.

Preferred examples of lower alkyl serviceable as the above substituent include methyl, ethyl and propyl, in particular, methyl.

Preferred examples of lower alkoxy serviceable as the above

substituent include methoxy and ethoxy.

Preferred examples of the above substituents include lower alkyl groups.

Among the trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene groups, for example, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene are preferred.

Hence, among the optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene represented jointly by R^{61} and R^{71} , those preferred include unsubstituted tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene and 2,3-epoxytetramethylene; and lower alkyl-substituted tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene and 2,3-epoxytetramethylene.

Preferred embodiments of R^{61} and R^{71} include: those wherein R^{61} and R^{71} each independently is selected from C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl or cycloalkyl-lower alkyl; or R^{61} and R^{71} together stand for trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene which optionally have substituent(s) selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy. More specifically, the preferred embodiments include those wherein both R^{61} and R^{71} are methyl, ethyl, propyl, 2-propenyl or cyclopropylmethyl; R^{61} is cyclohexylmethyl and R^{71} is methyl; or R^{61} and R^{71} together form tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene group.

As Q^- , for example, anions formed from halogen atoms such as Cl^- , Br^- and I^- are preferred;

s means 0, 1 or 2; and Q^- stands for anion, convenient s being 1.

Ar^1 , Ar^2 and Ar^3 each independently stands for optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower

alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl.

Said "optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl" mean unsubstituted phenyl or phenyl having substituent(s) at substitutable, optional position(s), said one, two or more, preferably one or two same or different substituents being selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl.

Among the halogen atoms as the substituent, for example, fluorine, chlorine and bromine, inter alia, fluorine, are preferred.

Among the lower alkyl groups as the substituent, for example, methyl, ethyl and propyl are preferred.

Among the lower alkenyl groups as the substituent, for example, vinyl, 1-propenyl and 2-propenyl are preferred.

Among the lower alkoxy groups as the substituent, for example, methoxy and ethoxy are preferred.

Among the lower alkylcarbamoyl groups as the substituent, for example, methylcarbamoyl and ethylcarbamoyl are preferred.

Among the di-lower alkylcarbamoyl groups as the substituent, for example, dimethylcarbamoyl and diethylcarbamoyl are preferred.

As the substituent, halogen atoms and lower alkyl groups are preferred.

As Ar^1 , Ar^2 and Ar^3 , independently of each other, phenyl which is optionally substituted with halogen or lower alkyl are preferred. In particular, such cases wherein all of them are unsubstituted phenyl, or phenyl substituted with halogen, inter alia, fluorine, are preferred.

The suffix k stands for 0 or 1; and m and n, each independently, 0, 1 or 2, preferred n being 1 or 2.

R¹ stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl.

5 Said "optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl" mean unsubstituted lower alkyl groups as above-named or the lower alkyl groups having substituent(s) at substitutable, optional position(s), said one, two or more, preferably one or two same or different substituents being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl.

15 Among the above lower alkylcarbamoyl as the substituent, for example, methylcarbamoyl and ethylcarbamoyl are preferred.

Among the di-lower alkylcarbamoyl as the substituent, for example, dimethylcarbamoyl and diethylcarbamoyl are preferred.

Preferred substituents include hydroxyl, amino and carbamoyl groups.

20 As the R¹ lower alkyl, for example, methyl, ethyl and propyl are preferred.

Thus, specific examples of R¹ include hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, aminomethyl, 2-aminoethyl, carbamoylmethyl, 2-carbamoylethyl, methylcarbamoylmethyl, 2-methylcarbamoylethyl, dimethylcarbamoylmethyl, 2-dimethylcarbamoylethyl, 4-imidazolylmethyl and 2-(4-imidazolyl)ethyl. Of those, hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, aminomethyl, 2-aminoethyl, carbamoylmethyl and 2-carbamoylethyl are preferred, in particular, hydrogen is preferred.

30 R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl, or R² and R³,

or R⁴ and R⁵, may together stand for, independently of each other, optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by -R⁷.

Said "optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl" mean unsubstituted lower alkyl groups as above-named or the lower alkyl groups having substituent(s) at substitutable, optional positions(s), said one, two or more, preferably one or two same or different substituents being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl.

Among the lower alkylcarbamoyl as the substituent, for example, methylcarbamoyl and ethylcarbamoyl are preferred.

Among the di-lower alkylcarbamoyl as the substituent, for example, dimethylcarbamoyl and diethylcarbamoyl are preferred.

Preferred substituents include hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl and imidazolyl groups.

As the lower alkyl groups as R², R³, R⁴ or R⁵, for example, methyl, ethyl and propyl are preferred.

Thus, examples of the optionally substituted lower alkyl as R², R³, R⁴ or R⁵ are same to those earlier named optionally substituted lower alkyl groups as R¹, among which methyl, ethyl, propyl, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, aminomethyl, 2-aminoethyl, carbamoylmethyl, 2-carbamoylethyl and 4-imidazolylmethyl, inter alia, methyl and 4-imidazolylmethyl, are preferred.

Said "optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene,

10031716-032602

tetramethylene or 2-butenylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, 5 (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by $-R^7$ mean unsubstituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene and 2-butenylene groups, or those having substituent(s) at substitutable, 10 optional position(s), said one, two or more, preferably one or two same or different substituents being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)- 15 amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by $-R^7$.

Among the lower alkoxy as the substituent, for example, methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy and tert-butoxy are preferred.

20 Among the lower alkanoyloxy as the substituent, for example, acetoxy and propionyloxy are preferred.

Among the lower alkylamino as the substituent, for example, methylamino, ethylamino and propylamino are preferred.

25 Among the di-lower alkylamino as the substituent, for example, dimethylamino and diethylamino are preferred.

Among the (imino-lower alkyl)amino as the substituent, for example, formimidoylamino, acetimidoylamino and propanimidoyl-amino are preferred.

30 Among the lower alkanoylamino as the substituent, for example, acetylamino and propionylamino are preferred.

Among the lower alkoxycarbonylamino as the substituent, for example, methoxycarbonylamino, ethoxycarbonylamino and propoxycarbonylamino are preferred.

Among the (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino as the substituent, for example, (methylcarbamoyl)amino, (ethylcarbamoyl)amino and (propylcarbamoyl)amino are preferred.

Among the lower alkylsulfonylamino as the substituent, for example, methylsulfonylamino, ethylsulfonylamino and propylsulfonylamino are preferred.

Among the lower alkoxy-carbonyl as the substituent, for example, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl and propoxycarbonyl are preferred.

Among the lower alkylcarbamoyl as the substituent, for example, methylcarbamoyl, ethylcarbamoyl and propylcarbamoyl are preferred.

Among di-lower alkylcarbamoyl as the substituent, for example, dimethylcarbamoyl and diethylcarbamoyl are preferred.

R⁷ stands for optionally substituted lower alkyl group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxy-carbonyl and imidazolyl.

“Optionally substituted lower alkyl group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxy-carbonyl and imidazolyl” means unsubstituted lower alkyl groups as above-named or the lower alkyl groups having substituent(s) at substitutable, optional position(s), said one, two or more, preferably one or two same or different substituents being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxy-carbonyl and imidazolyl.

Among the lower alkylcarbamoyl as the substituent, for example, methylcarbamoyl, ethylcarbamoyl and propylcarbamoyl are preferred.

Among the di-lower alkylcarbamoyl as the substituent, for example, dimethylcarbamoyl and diethylcarbamoyl are preferred.

Among the lower alkoxy-carbonyl as the substituent, for example, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl and propoxycarbonyl are preferred.

As the substituent groups, for example, hydroxyl, amino and carbamoyl are preferred.

As the lower alkyl groups as R^7 , for example, methyl and ethyl are preferred.

Hence, preferred examples of R^7 include methyl, ethyl, propyl, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, aminomethyl, 2-aminoethyl, carbamoylmethyl, 2-carbamoylethyl, methylcarbamoylmethyl, 2-methylcarbamoylethyl, dimethylcarbamoylmethyl, 2-dimethylcarbamoylethyl, methoxycarbonylmethyl, 2-methoxycarbonylethyl, 4-imidazolylmethyl and 2-(4-imidazolyl)ethyl. In particular, methyl, ethyl, hydroxymethyl, aminomethyl and carbamoylmethyl are preferred.

As the substituent(s) on trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene, oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkylamino and di-lower alkylamino, inter alia, hydroxyl and amino, are preferred.

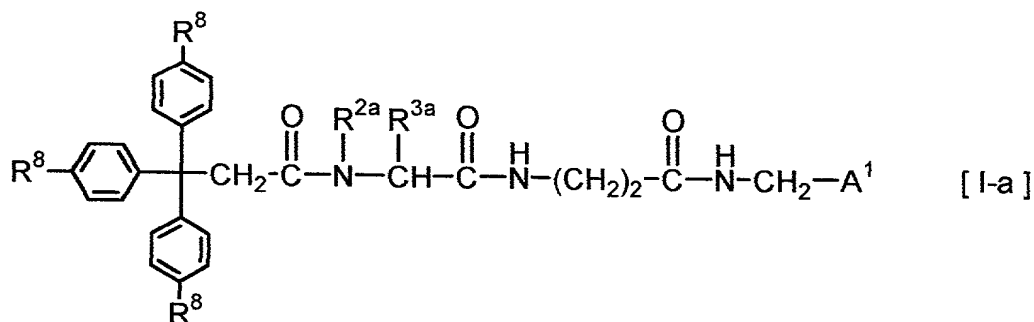
Among trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene and 2-butenylene groups, trimethylene is the preferred.

Accordingly, among those optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene and 2-butenylene formed together by R^2 and R^3 , or R^4 and R^5 , unsubstituted trimethylene and hydroxyl- or amino-substituted trimethylene are particularly preferred.

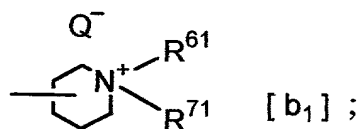
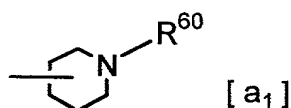
Preferred embodiments of R^2 , R^3 , R^4 and R^5 include one wherein R^2 , R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are hydrogen atoms at the same time; those wherein either one of R^2 and R^3 is hydrogen and the other is an optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl, and both R^4 and R^5 are hydrogen atoms; and those wherein R^2 and R^3 , or R^4 and R^5

together stand for, independently of each other, optionally substituted trimethylene, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and $-R^7$ (here R^7 has the earlier defined signification).

Among the compounds represented by the general formula [I], therefore, for example those in which Ar^1 , Ar^2 and Ar^3 are each independently phenyl which may be halogen- or lower alkyl-substituted, n is 1 or 2, s is 1, and R^1 is hydrogen, are preferred. In particular, the compounds represented by the following general formula [I-a]:



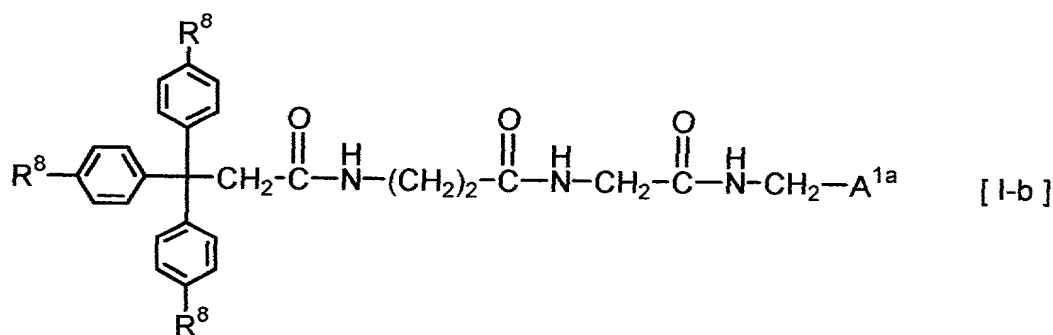
[wherein A^1 stands for a group represented by the formula $[a_1]$ or $[b_1]$



R^{2a} and R^{3a} each independently stands for hydrogen, or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being

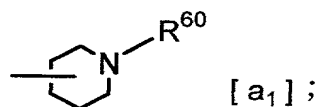
selected from hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower
alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl; R⁸
stands for hydrogen, halogen or lower alkyl; R⁶⁰, R⁶¹, R⁷¹ and
Q⁻ have the earlier defined significations];

5 the compounds represented by the general formula [I-b]:



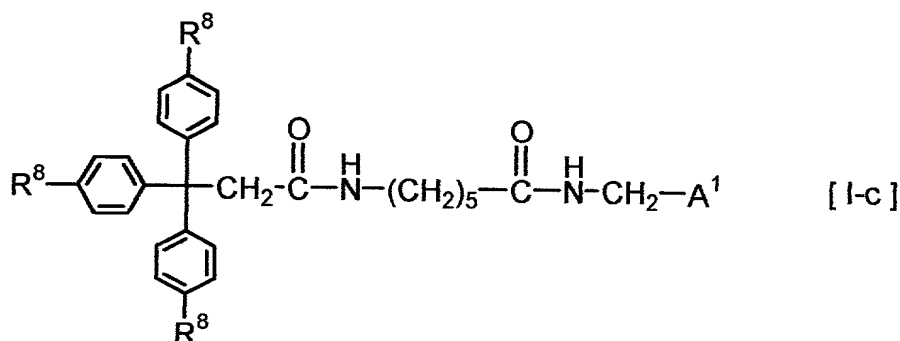
[wherein A^{1a} stands for a group of the formula [a₁]

10



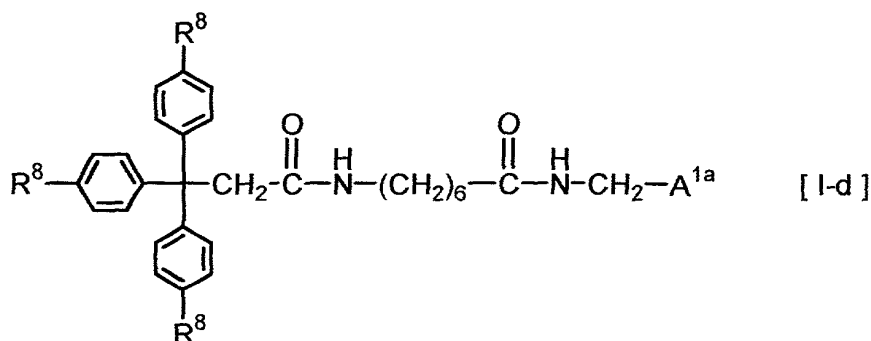
and R⁸ and R⁶⁰ have the earlier defined significations];

15 the compounds represented by the general formula [I-c]:



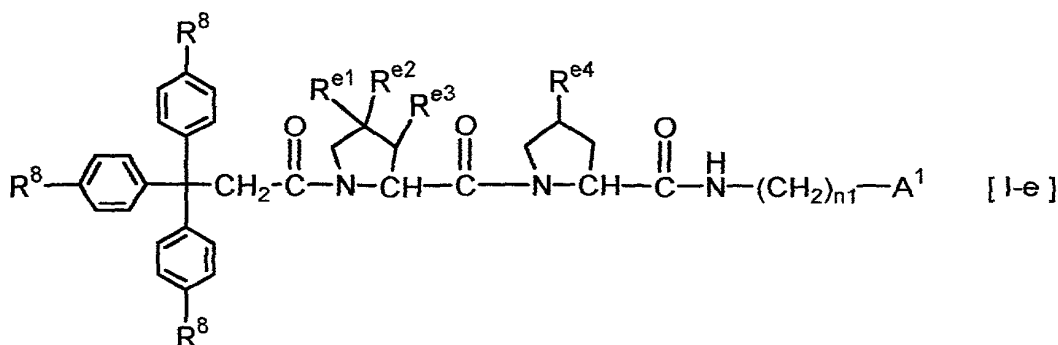
[in which A¹ and R⁸ have the earlier defined significations];

20 the compounds represented by the general formula [I-d]:



[in which A^{1a} and R⁸ have the earlier defined significations];

5 and the compounds represented by the general formula [1-e]



10 [in which n₁ stands for 1 or 2; R^{e1}, R^{e2}, R^{e3} and R^{e4} each independently stands for hydrogen, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by -R⁷; or R^{e1} and R^{e2} together signify oxo group; and A¹, R⁷ and R⁸ have the earlier defined significations]

are preferred.

20 Among the compounds represented by the general formula [1-a], the preferred are those in which R^{2a} is hydrogen and R^{3a} is

hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, aminomethyl, 2-aminoethyl, carbamoylmethyl, 2-carbamoylethyl or 4-imidazolylmethyl, in particular, hydrogen or 4-imidazolylmethyl; or those in which R^{2a} is methyl and R^{3a} is hydrogen.

5 Among the compounds represented by the general formula [I-e], the preferred are those in which R^{e1} , R^{e2} , R^{e3} and R^{e4} each independently is hydrogen, hydroxyl, amino, methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, tert-butoxy, acetoxy, methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, dimethylamino and diethylamino, or those in which R^{e1} and R^{e2}
10 together form oxo group and R^{e3} and R^{e4} both are hydrogen atoms. In particular, the compounds in which R^{e1} is hydroxyl or amino, preferably hydroxyl, and R^{e2} , R^{e3} and R^{e4} are hydrogen atoms at the same time; those in which both R^{e1} and R^{e3} are hydroxyl groups and both R^{e2} and R^{e4} are hydrogen atoms; or those in which both R^{e1} and
15 R^{e2} are hydroxyl groups and both R^{e3} and R^{e4} are hydrogen atoms are advantageous. Inter alia, the compounds where A^1 is a group represented by the formula [b₁], R^{61} and R^{71} are at the same time methyl, ethyl, propyl, 2-propenyl or cyclopropylmethyl, in particular, ethyl, propyl or cyclopropylmethyl; or R^{61} is cyclohexylmethyl and R^{71}
20 is methyl; or R^{61} and R^{71} together form tetramethylene, 2-butenylene or pentamethylene, in particular, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene, can be advantageously used.

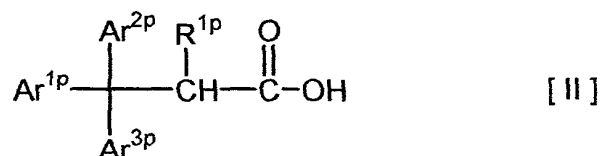
Referring to those general formulae [I-a], [I-b], [I-c], [I-d] and [I-e], convenient R^8 is, for example, hydrogen or halogen, in particular,
25 hydrogen or fluorine.

Now processes for preparing the compounds of the present invention are explained.

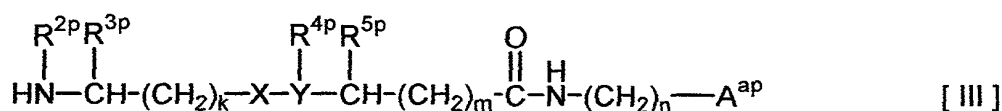
The compounds of the present invention can be prepared by the following processes or those as shown in working examples, it
30 being understood that the preparation processes of compounds of this invention are not limited to those reaction examples.

Production process 1

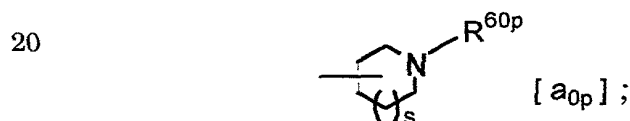
Carboxylic acid of the general formula [II]:



5 [in which Ar^{1p}, Ar^{2p} and Ar^{3p} each independently stands for
 optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected
 from the group consisting of halogen, lower alkyl, lower
 alkenyl, lower alkoxy and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and
 optionally protected hydroxyl, carbamoyl and lower
 10 alkylcarbamoyl; and R^{1p} stands for hydrogen or optionally
 substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from
 the group consisting of di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, optionally
 protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl
 and imidazolyl groups]
 or salt or reactive derivative thereof is reacted with a compound of the
 15 general formula [III]:



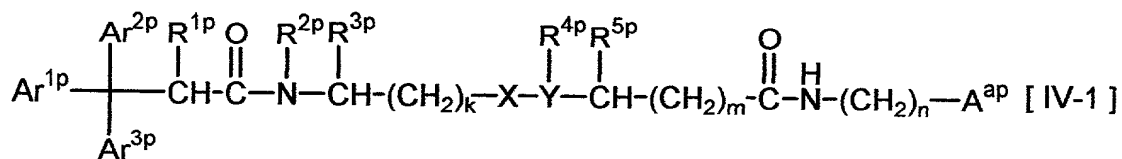
[in which A^{ap} stands for a group of the formula [a_{op}]



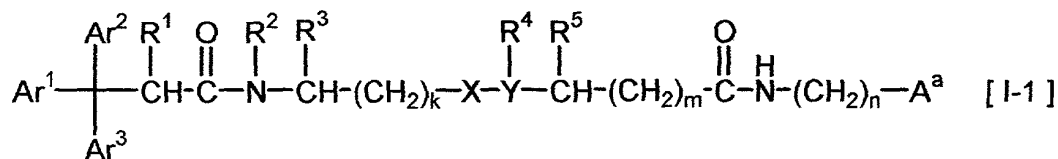
25 R^{2p}, R^{3p}, R^{4p} and R^{5p} each independently stands for hydrogen or
 optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being
 selected from the group consisting of di-lower alkylcarbamoyl
 and optionally protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower
 alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups, or R^{2p} and R^{3p}, or R^{4p}
 and R^{5p}, together form, each independently of the other pair,

optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene,
tetramethylene or 2-butenylene, the substituent being selected
from the group consisting of lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy,
di-lower alkylamino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, di-lower
5 alkylcarbamoyl, a group represented by $-R^{7p}$ and optionally
protected oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkylamino, (imino-lower
alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino,
(lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino,
guanidino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl
10 groups; R^{7p} stands for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the
substituent being selected from the group consisting of
di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and lower alkoxycarbonyl, and
optionally protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower
alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups; R^{60p} stands for
15 imino-protecting group, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl,
cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion being optionally
substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or
aralkyl; and k, m, n, s, X and Y have the earlier defined
significations]

20 or salt thereof, to form a compound represented by the general
formula [IV-1]

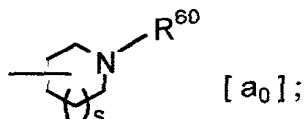


25 [in which A^{ap} , Ar^{1p} , Ar^{2p} , Ar^{3p} , k, m, n, R^{1p} , R^{2p} , R^{3p} , R^{4p} , R^{5p} , X
and Y have the earlier defined significations]
or a salt thereof, and if necessary the protective group(s) are removed
to produce a compound represented by the general formula [I-1]



[in which A^a stands for a group of the formula [a₀]

5

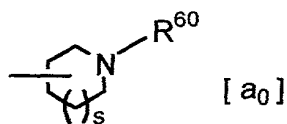


Ar¹, Ar², Ar³, k, m, n, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶⁰, s, X and Y have the earlier defined significations]

10 or salts thereof.

The above production process 1 is the process for producing, among the compounds of the present invention which are represented by the general formula [I], those in which A in said general formula is a group represented by the formula [a₀]

15



[in which R⁶⁰ and s have the earlier defined significations], i.e., the compounds expressed by the earlier given general formula [I-1].

Where the reactants in the above reaction contain oxo, hydroxyl, amino or imino groups which do not participate in the reaction, those groups are preferably suitably protected by respective protective groups before the reaction, and are deprotected after the reaction.

25 Examples of "oxo-protective group" include acetals and ketals such as ethylene ketal, trimethylene ketal and dimethyl ketal.

Examples of "hydroxyl-protective group" include alkyl such as tert-butyl; substituted silyls such as trimethylsilyl, tert-butyl dimethylsilyl and tert-butyl diphenylsilyl; lower alkoxymethyl

such as methoxymethyl and 2-methoxyethoxymethyl; tetrahydro-
pyranyl; trimethylsilylethoxymethyl; aralkyl such as benzyl,
p-methoxybenzyl, 2,3-dimethoxybenzyl, o-nitrobenzyl, p-nitrobenzyl
and triphenylmethyl; and acyl such as formyl and acetyl. In
5 particular, tert-butyl, benzyl, methoxymethyl, tetrahydropyranyl,
triphenylmethyl, trimethylsilylethoxymethyl, tert-butyldimethylsilyl
and acetyl groups are preferred.

Examples of "amino- or imino-protective group" include
aralkyl such as benzyl, p-methoxybenzyl, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl,
10 o-nitrobenzyl, p-nitrobenzyl, benzhydryl and triphenylmethyl; lower
alkanoyl such as formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl and pivaloyl;
benzoyl; arylalkanoyl such as phenylacetyl and phenoxyacetyl; lower
alkoxycarbonyl such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl,
propyloxycarbonyl and tert-butoxycarbonyl; aralkyloxycarbonyl such
15 as benzyloxycarbonyl, p-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl and phenethyloxy-
carbonyl; lower alkylsilyl such as trimethylsilyl and tert-butyldi-
methylsilyl; phthaloyl; and aralkylidene such as benzylidene,
p-chlorobenzylidene and o-nitrobenzylidene. In particular, acetyl,
pivaloyl, benzoyl, ethoxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl and
20 tert-butoxycarbonyl groups are preferred.

The reaction of a carboxylic acid of the general formula [II] or
salt or reactive derivative thereof with a compound expressed by the
general formula [III] or salt thereof is usually carried out using 1-5
mols, preferably 1-2 mols, of the carboxylic acid of the formula [II] or
25 salt or reactive derivative thereof, per mol of the compound of the
formula [III] or salt thereof.

"Salt" of said carboxylic acid of the formula [II] means base
addition salt at the carboxyl group, examples of which include alkali
metal salt such as sodium salt and potassium salt; alkaline earth
30 metal salt such as calcium salt and magnesium salt; ammonium salt;
and organic amine salt such as trimethylamine salt, triethylamine
salt, dicyclohexylamine salt, ethanolamine salt, diethanolamine salt,
triethanolamine salt, procaine salt and N,N-dibenzylethylenediamine

10034746-032602
salt.

Examples of "reactive derivative" of the carboxylic acid of the formula [II] are mixed acid anhydrides, active esters and active amides.

5 Where said carboxylic acid of the formula [III] or salt thereof is used in the reaction, the reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a condensing agent such as, for example, N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide, diphenylphosphoryl azide and dipyridyldisulfide-triphenylphosphin, 10 in particular, 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride.

The use rate of the condensing agent is not strictly limited, while it is usually in the range of 1-5 mols, preferably 1-2 mols, per mol of the carboxylic acid of the formula [III] or salt thereof.

15 The reaction is usually carried out in an inert solvent, examples of which include diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, N,N-dimethylformamide, dioxane, benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene, methylene chloride, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, dichloroethane and trichloroethylene; and mixtures of those solvents. In particular, 20 diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, N,N-dimethylformamide, chloroform and dioxane are preferred.

The reaction temperature usually ranges from -70°C to the boiling point of the solvent used in the reaction, preferably -20°C – 100°C .

25 The reaction time usually ranges from 5 minutes to 7 days, preferably from 10 minutes to 24 hours.

The reaction may also be carried out in the presence of a base, for smooth progress of the reaction.

30 Examples of useful base include aliphatic tertiary amine such as triethylamine and diisopropylethylamine; and aromatic amines such as pyridine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine and quinoline. Of those, triethylamine and 4-dimethylaminopyridine are preferred.

The use rate of said base can be within a range of 1-5 mols,

preferably 1-2 mols, per mol of the carboxylic acid expressed by the formula [II] or salt or reactive derivative thereof.

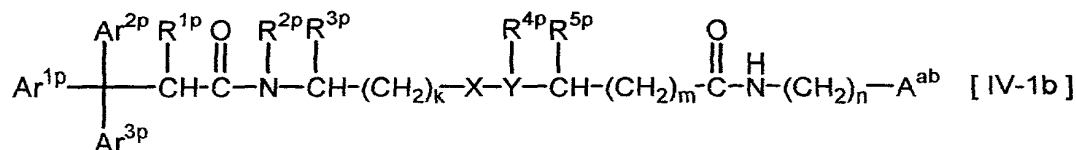
Mixed acid anhydride of carboxylic acid of the formula [II] can be obtained by reacting carboxylic acid of the formula [II] with, for example, alkyl chlorocarbonate such as ethyl chlorocarbonate; aliphatic carboxylic acid chloride such as acetyl chloride, pivaloyl chloride and the like, according to usual method.

Active esters of carboxylic acid of the formula [II] can be obtained by reacting the carboxylic acid of said formula [II] with, for example, an N-hydroxy compound such as N-hydroxysuccinimide, N-hydroxyphthalimide or 1-hydroxybenzotriazole; or a phenol compound such as 4-nitrophenol, 2,4-dinitrophenol, 2,4,5-trichlorophenol, pentachlorophenol or the like; in the presence of a condensing agent, e.g., N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride, diphenylphosphoryl azide or dipyridyl disulfide-triphenylphosphine, according to usual method.

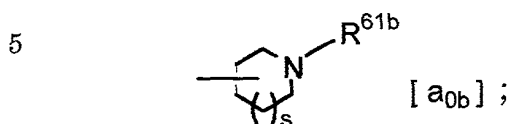
Active amide of the carboxylic acid of the formula [II] can be obtained by reacting the carboxylic acid of formula [II] with 1,1'-carbonyldiimidazole, 1,1'-carbonylbis(2-methylimidazole) or the like according to usual methods.

After completion of the reaction, ordinary treatment is given to provide crude product of a compound expressed by the general formula [IV-1], which is optionally purified according to usual method and further if necessary subjected to a reaction for removing protective group(s) of oxo, hydroxyl, amino or imino, to provide a compound of the formula [I-1].

Method for removing the protective group(s) differs depending on the kind of the protective group and stability of the object compound [I-1], but those methods known per se may be employed, for example, those taught in Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, T.W. Greene, John Wiley & Sons Co. (1981) or methods analogous thereto, for example, solvolysis using an acid or base, that is, using for example 0.01 mol – a large excess of an acid, preferably trifluoroacetic

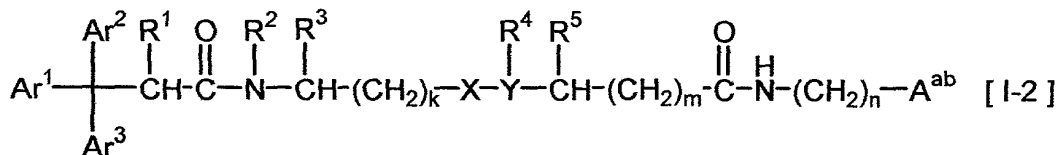


[in which A^{ab} signifies a group represented by the formula $[a_{ob}]$



R^{61b} signifies C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; Ar^{1p}, Ar^{2p}, Ar^{3p}, k, m, n, R^{1p}, R^{2p}, R^{3p}, R^{4p}, R^{5p}, s, X, and Y have the earlier defined significations]

or a salt thereof, and if necessary removing the protective groups, a compound of the general formula [I-2]:

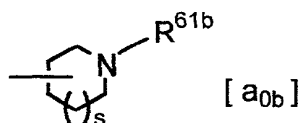


in which $A^{ab}, Ar^1, Ar^2, Ar^3, k, m, n, R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4, R^5, s, X$ and

Y have the earlier defined significations]

or a salt thereof can be produced.

The production process 2 is a process for producing, among the compounds of the present invention represented by the general formula [I], those in which A is the group expressed by the formula [a_{ob}]:



[in which R^{61b} and s have the earlier defined significations],
i.e., the compounds expressed by the general formula [I-2].

5 Said "C₁-C₁₀ alkylidene, lower alkenylidene, cycloalkylidene, cycloalkyl-lower alkylidene whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkylidene or aralkylidene" as R^{61a} mean those which are capable of becoming the corresponding
10 "C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl", respectively, after completion of the above reaction.

The reaction of a compound represented by the general formula [IV-1a] or a salt thereof with a compound represented by the general formula [V] under reducing conditions is a so-called reductive
15 alkylatin reaction of an amino group, and conducted using a mol or molar excess, preferably 1-2 mols, of the compound of the general formula [V] per mol of the compound of the general formula [IV-1a] or salt thereof, in the presence of a reducing agent or under catalytic
20 reduction, in an inert solvent which has no adverse effect on the reaction.

As the inert solvent, for example, alcohols such a methanol or ethanol; ethers such as diethyl ether, methyl tert-butyl ether, tetrahydrofuran or dioxane; aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene or toluene; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloroethane; or their
25 mixtures can be named, in particular, methanol, ethanol, tetrahydrofuran, dichloroethane or toluene being preferred.

Where the reaction is carried out in the presence of a reducing agent, examples of useful reducing agent include complex metal hydrides such as sodium boron hydride, sodium cyanoboron
30 hydride, aluminium lithium hydride, aluminium diisobutyl hydride and sodium triacetoxyboron hydride; in particular, sodium boron

hydride, sodium cyanoboron hydride or sodium triacetoxyboron hydride being preferred.

The use rate of said reducing agent is usually a mol to molar excess, preferably 1-10 mols, per mol of the compound represented by
5 the general formula [IV-1a] or salt thereof.

The reaction temperature usually ranges from about -30°C to about 200°C , preferably from about 0°C to 100°C ; and the reaction time usually ranges from an instant to 7 days, preferably from an instant to 24 hours.

10 Where the reaction is carried out under catalytic reduction, for example, palladium-carbon catalyst, Raney nickel catalyst or the like is used as the catalyst.

The hydrogen pressure in the catalytic reduction reaction is usually and conveniently from atmospheric to 2 atmospheres, and the
15 use rate of the catalyst is usually from 1/100 to 1, preferably 1/100 – 1/10 by weight to the starting compound [IV-1a].

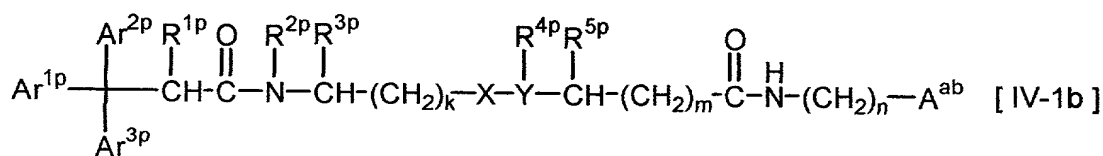
The reaction temperature usually ranges from about -30°C to 50°C , preferably from about 0°C to room temperature, and the reaction time usually ranges from an instant to 7 days, preferably
20 from an instant to 24 hours.

As the means of reduction in this reaction, the above-described reduction method using the complex metal hydride is convenient.

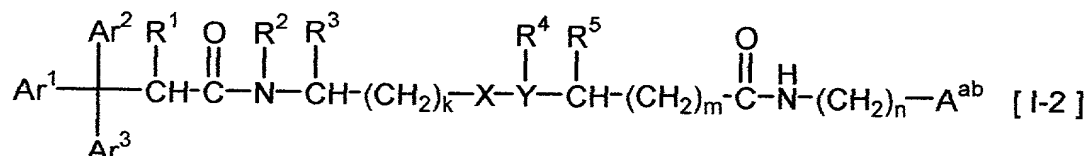
This reaction may be conducted under weakly acidic
25 conditions, in which Schiff base is easily formed. As examples of acid useful for pH control for that purpose include p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, acetic acid and trifluoroacetic acid.

In this step it is also possible not to conduct the reaction in the presence of a reducing agent or under catalytic reduction, but to
30 first react a compound of the general formula [IV-1a] or salt thereof with a compound of the general formula [V] to form an imine in advance, and then to subject said imine to a reducing reaction.

In the above reaction where such groups as oxo, hydroxyl,



5 [in which A^{ab} , Ar^{1p} , Ar^{2p} , Ar^{3p} , k , m , n , R^{1p} , R^{2p} , R^{3p} , R^{4p} , R^{5p} ,
X and Y have the earlier defined significations]
or salt thereof, and if necessary removing the protective groups, a
compound of the general formula [I-2]



10 [in which A^{ab} , Ar^1 , Ar^2 , Ar^3 , k , m , n , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , s , X
and Y have the earlier defined significations]
or salt thereof can be produced .

15 The production process 3 is a method for producing the
compounds expressed by the general formula [I-2], same as above
production process 2.

20 Examples of "leaving group" expressed by L^1 include halogen
atoms such as chlorine, bromine and iodine; alkylsulfonyloxy groups
such as methylsulfonyloxy; or arylsulfonyloxy groups such as
p-toluenesulfonyloxy.

25 The reaction of a compound of the general formula [IV-1a] or
a salt thereof with a compound of the general formula [IV-1] is usually
conducted using a mol or molar excess, preferably 1-2 mols, of the
compound of the formula [VI-1] per mol of the compound of formula
[IV-1a] or salt thereof, in an inert solvent which is not detrimental to
the reaction.

As such inert solvent, for example, ethers such as diethyl
ether, tetrahydrofuran and dioxane; aromatic hydrocarbons such as

benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene and xylene; and aprotic polar solvents such as dimethylsulfoxide, N,N-dimethylformamide, acetonitrile and hexamethylphosphoric triamide; or mixtures of the foregoing can be used.

5 For smooth progress, the reaction may be carried out in the presence of base and/or a reaction assistant.

As the base, for example, alkali metal bicarbonates such as sodium hydrogencarbonate and potassium hydrogencarbonate; alkali metal carbonates such as sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate; 10 tertiary aliphatic amines such as trimethylamine, triethylamine, N,N-diisopropylethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylpiperidine, N,N-dimethylaniline, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU) and 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene (DBN); and aromatic amines such as pyridine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, 15 picoline, lutidine, quinoline and isoquinoline can be used. Of those, potassium carbonate, N,N-diisopropylethylamine and triethylamine are preferred.

The use rate of the base is usually a mol or molar excess, preferably 1-3 mols, per mol of the compound of the formula [IV-1a].

20 As assistant useful for the reaction, for example, alkali metal iodides such as lithium iodide, sodium iodide and potassium iodide may be named. Of these, potassium iodide is preferred.

The use rate of the assistant is usually from catalytic to excessive amount, preferably from catalytic amount to one equivalent, 25 to the compound of the formula [IV-1a].

The reaction temperature may usually range from about 0°C to the boiling point of the solvent used in the reaction, and the reaction time may usually range from 10 minutes to 48 hours.

In the above reaction where such groups as oxo, hydroxyl, 30 amino or imino which do not participate in the reaction are present in the reactants, it is desirable to suitably protect them with protective groups of oxo, hydroxyl, amino or imino, respectively, before the reaction and to remove the protective groups after the reaction.

As the protective groups suitable for oxo, hydroxyl, amino or imino, those respective protective groups as described in relation to the production process 1 are applicable as they are.

Upon completion of the reaction, after removing the
 5 protective groups in the compound of the general formula [IV-1b] where they are present; or where no protective group is present in the product, without such an intervening treatment, the product is processed in the usual manner to produce a compound of the general formula [I-2].

10 For removing the protective groups and conducting the post-treatment, those methods as described as to the production process 1 are applicable

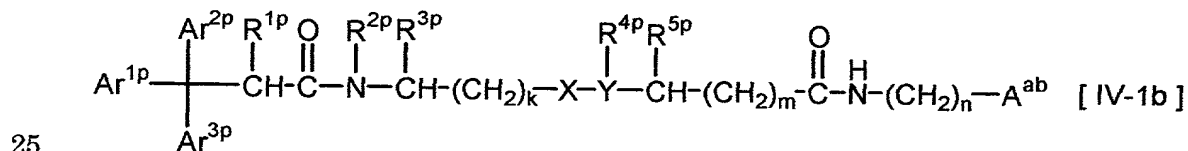
Production process 4

15 By following the steps of reacting a compound of the general formula [VI-2]:



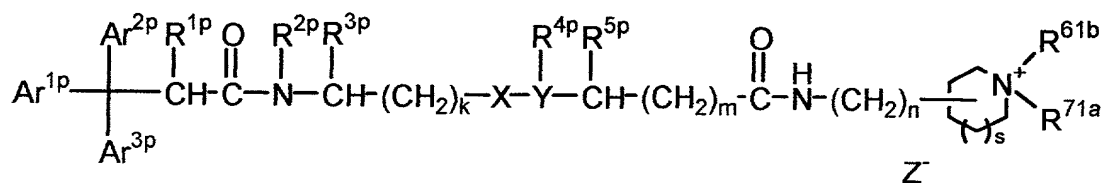
20 [in which L^2 signifies a leaving group; R^{71a} signifies C_1-C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl]

or a salt thereof with a compound of the general formula [IV-1b]:



[in which A^{ab} , Ar^{1p} , Ar^{2p} , Ar^{3p} , k , m , n , R^{1p} , R^{2p} , R^{3p} , R^{4p} , R^{5p} , s ,
 X and Y have the earlier defined significations]

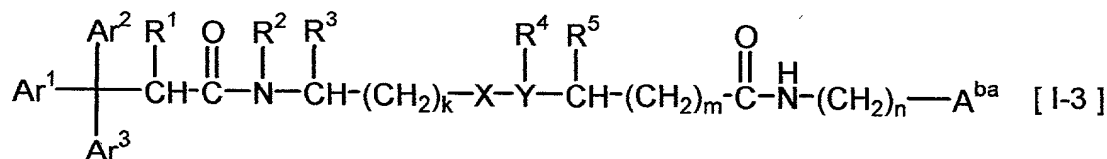
30 or a salt thereof, to form a compound expressed by the general formula [IV-2]:



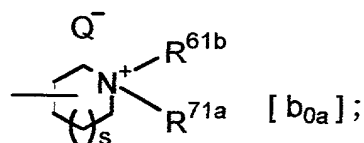
[IV-2]

[in which Z^- signifies anion; Ar^{1p} , Ar^{2p} , Ar^{3p} , k , m , n , R^{1p} , R^{2p} , R^{3p} , R^{4p} , R^{5p} , R^{61b} , R^{71a} , s , X and Y have the earlier defined significations]

and if necessary removing the protective group(s) and/or exchanging the anion, a compound of the general formula [1-3]:



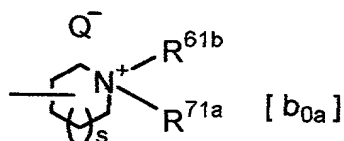
[in which A^{ba} signifies a group expressed by the formula $[b_{0a}]$



Ar^1 , Ar^2 , Ar^3 , k , m , n , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^{61b} , R^{71a} , s , X , Y and Q^- have the earlier defined significations]

can be produced.

The production process 4 is a method for producing, among the compounds of the present invention represented by the general formula [I], those in which A is a group expressed by the formula $[b_{0a}]$:



[in which R^{61b} , R^{71a} , s and Q^- have the earlier defined significations],

i.e., the compounds represented by the general formula [I-3].

As the "leaving group" expressed by L^2 , those leaving groups exemplified as L^1 in the production process 3 are equally applicable.

In the above reaction where such groups as oxo, hydroxyl, amino or imino which do not participate in the reaction are present in the reactants, it is desirable to suitably protect them with protective groups of oxo, hydroxyl, amino or imino, respectively, before the reaction and to remove the protective groups after the reaction.

As the protective groups suitable for oxo, hydroxyl, amino or imino, those respective protective groups as described in relation to the production process 1 are applicable as they are.

The reaction of a compound expressed by the general formula [VI-2] or salt thereof with a compound of the general formula [IV-1b] or salt thereof is usually carried out using a mol or molar excess, preferably a large molar excess, of the compound of formula [VI-2] or salt thereof, per mol of the compound of the formula [IV-1b] or salt thereof, in the absence of a solvent or in an inert solvent which is not detrimental to the reaction, non-use of solvent being preferred.

As such inert solvent, for example, ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran and dioxane; aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene and xylene; halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane and dichloroethane; and aprotic polar solvents such as dimethyl sulfoxide, N,N-dimethylformamide, acetonitrile and hexamethylphosphoric triamide; or mixtures of the foregoing can be used, in particular, chloroform and acetonitrile being preferred.

For smooth progress, the reaction may be carried out in the presence of base and/or a reaction assistant.

As the base, for example, alkali metal bicarbonates such as sodium hydrogencarbonate and potassium hydrogencarbonate; alkali metal carbonates such as sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate;

tertiary aliphatic amines such as trimethylamine, diethylamine, triethylamine, N,N-diisopropylethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylpiperidine, N,N-dimethylaniline, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU) and 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]-
5 non-5-ene (DBN); and aromatic amines such as pyridine, 4-dimethyl-aminopyridine, picoline, lutidine, quinoline and isoquinoline can be used. Of those, potassium carbonate, diethylamine, triethylamine and N,N-diisopropylethylamine are particularly suitable.

The use rate of the base is usually a mol or molar excess,
10 preferably 1-3 mols, per mol of the compound of the formula [IV-1b].

As assistant useful for the reaction, for example, alkali metal iodides such as lithium iodide, sodium iodide and potassium iodide may be named. Of these, potassium iodide is preferred.

The use rate of the assistant is usually from catalytic to
15 excessive amount, preferably from catalytic amount to one equivalent, to the compound of the formula [IV-1b].

The reaction temperature may usually range from about 0°C to the boiling point of the solvent or reagent used in the reaction, preferably from 20°C to the boiling point of the solvent or reagent
20 used in the reaction, and the reaction time may usually range from 10 minutes to 48 hours, preferably 1-10 hours.

Upon completion of the reaction, after removing the protective groups in the compound of the general formula [IV-2] where they are present; or where no protective group is present in the
25 product, without such an intervening treatment, the product is processed in the usual manner to produce a compound of the general formula [I-3].

For removing the protective groups and conducting the post-treatment, those methods as described as to the production
30 process 1 are applicable.

Those compounds of the general formula [I-3] are isolated as those having a certain or more than one kind of anions, and thereafter the anions can be changed to other desired anions.

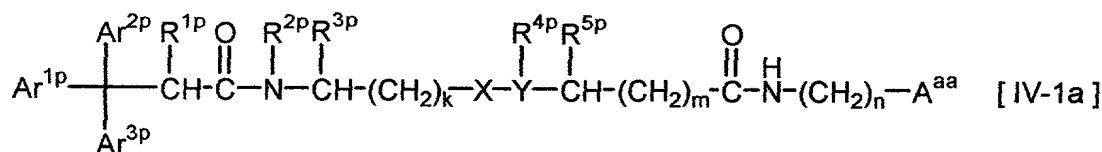
As the method of changing anions, for example, one comprising adsorbing the formula [I-3] compound onto a column filled with an adequate carrier, treating the same with a salt of an acid having an excess of desired anions, and eluting the intended formula [I-3] compound as formed.

Production process 5

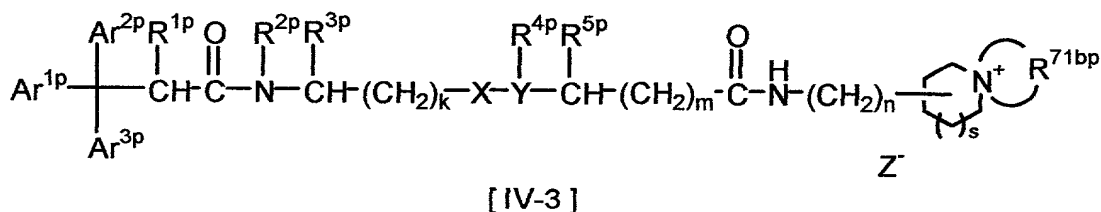
By following the steps of reacting a compound of the general formula [VII]:



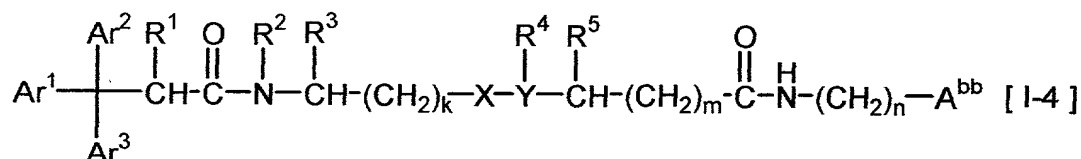
[in which L^3 and L^4 each independently signifies a leaving group, and R^{71bp} signifies optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, and optionally protected oxo and hydroxyl] or a salt thereof with a compound of a general formula [IV-1a]



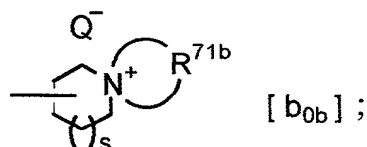
[in which A^{aa} , Ar^{1p} , Ar^{2p} , Ar^{3p} , k , m , n , R^{1p} , R^{2p} , R^{3p} , R^{4p} , R^{5p} , s , X and Y have the earlier defined significations] or a salt thereof, to form a compound of the general formula [IV-3]



[in which Ar^{1p}, Ar^{2p}, Ar^{3p}, k, m, n, R^{1p}, R^{2p}, R^{3p}, R^{4p}, R^{5p}, R^{71bp}, s, X, Y and Z⁻ have the earlier defined significations], and if necessary removing protective groups and/or exchanging the anion, a compound expressed by the general formula [I-4]:



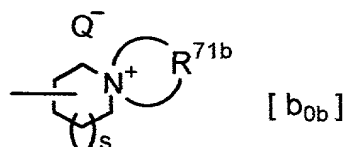
[in which A^{bb} signifies a group expressed by the formula [b_{ob}]:



Ar¹, Ar², Ar³, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R^{71b}, k, m, s, X, Y and Q⁻ have the earlier defined significations]

can be produced.

The production process 5 is a method for producing, among the compounds of the present invention represented by the general formula [I], those in which A is a group expressed by the formula [b_{ob}]:



[in which R^{71b}, s and Q⁻ have the earlier defined significations],

i.e., the compounds represented by the general formula [I-4].

As the "leaving group" expressed by L³ or L⁴, those exemplified as L¹ in the production process 3 are applicable independently of each other.

In the above reaction where such groups as oxo, hydroxyl,

amino or imino which do not participate in the reaction are present in the reactants, it is desirable to suitably protect them with protective groups of oxo, hydroxyl, amino or imino, respectively, before the reaction and to remove the protective groups after the reaction.

5 As the protective groups suitable for oxo, hydroxyl, amino or imino, those respective protective groups as described in relation to the production process 1 are applicable as they are.

 The reaction of a compound expressed by the general formula [IV-1a] or salt thereof with a compound of the general formula
10 [VII] or salt thereof is usually carried out using a mol or molar excess, preferably 1-5 mols, of the compound of the formula [VII] or salt thereof, per mol of the compound of the formula [IV-1a] or salt thereof, in an inert solvent which is not detrimental to the reaction.

 As such inert solvent, for example, ethers such as diethyl
15 ether, tetrahydrofuran and dioxane; aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, chlorobenzene and xylene; halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane and dichloroethane; and aprotic polar solvents such as dimethyl sulfoxide, N,N-dimethylformamide, acetonitrile and hexamethylphosphoric
20 triamide; or mixtures of the foregoing can be used, among which chloroform and acetonitrile are preferred.

 For smooth progress, the reaction may be carried out in the presence of base and/or a reaction assistant.

 As the base, for example, alkali metal bicarbonates such as
25 sodium hydrogencarbonate and potassium hydrogencarbonate; alkali metal carbonates such as sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate; tertiary aliphatic amines such as trimethylamine, diethylamine, triethylamine, N,N-diisopropylethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylpiperidine, N,N-dimethylaniline,
30 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU) and 1,5-diazabicyclo-[4.3.0]non-5-ene (DBN); and aromatic amines such as pyridine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, picoline, lutidine, quinoline and isoquinoline can be used. Of those, potassium carbonate, diethyl-

amine, triethylamine and N,N-diisopropylethylamine are preferred.

The use rate of the base is usually a mol or molar excess, preferably 1-3 mols, per mol of the compound of the formula [IV-1a].

As assistant useful for the reaction, for example, alkali metal
5 iodides such as lithium iodide, sodium iodide and potassium iodide may be named. Of these, potassium iodide is preferred.

The use rate of the assistant is usually from catalytic to excessive amount, preferably from catalytic amount to one equivalent, to the compound of the formula [IV-1a].

10 The reaction temperature may usually range from about 0°C to the boiling point of the solvent or reagent which is used in the reaction, preferably from 20°C to the solvent or reagent used in the reaction, and the reaction time may usually range from 10 minutes to 48 hours, preferably 1-10 hours.

15 Upon completion of the reaction, after removing the protective groups in the compound of the general formula [IV-3] where they are present; or where no protective group is present in the product, without such an intervening treatment, the product is processed in the usual manner or if necessary exchanged of the anions
20 therein to produce a compound of the general formula [I-4].

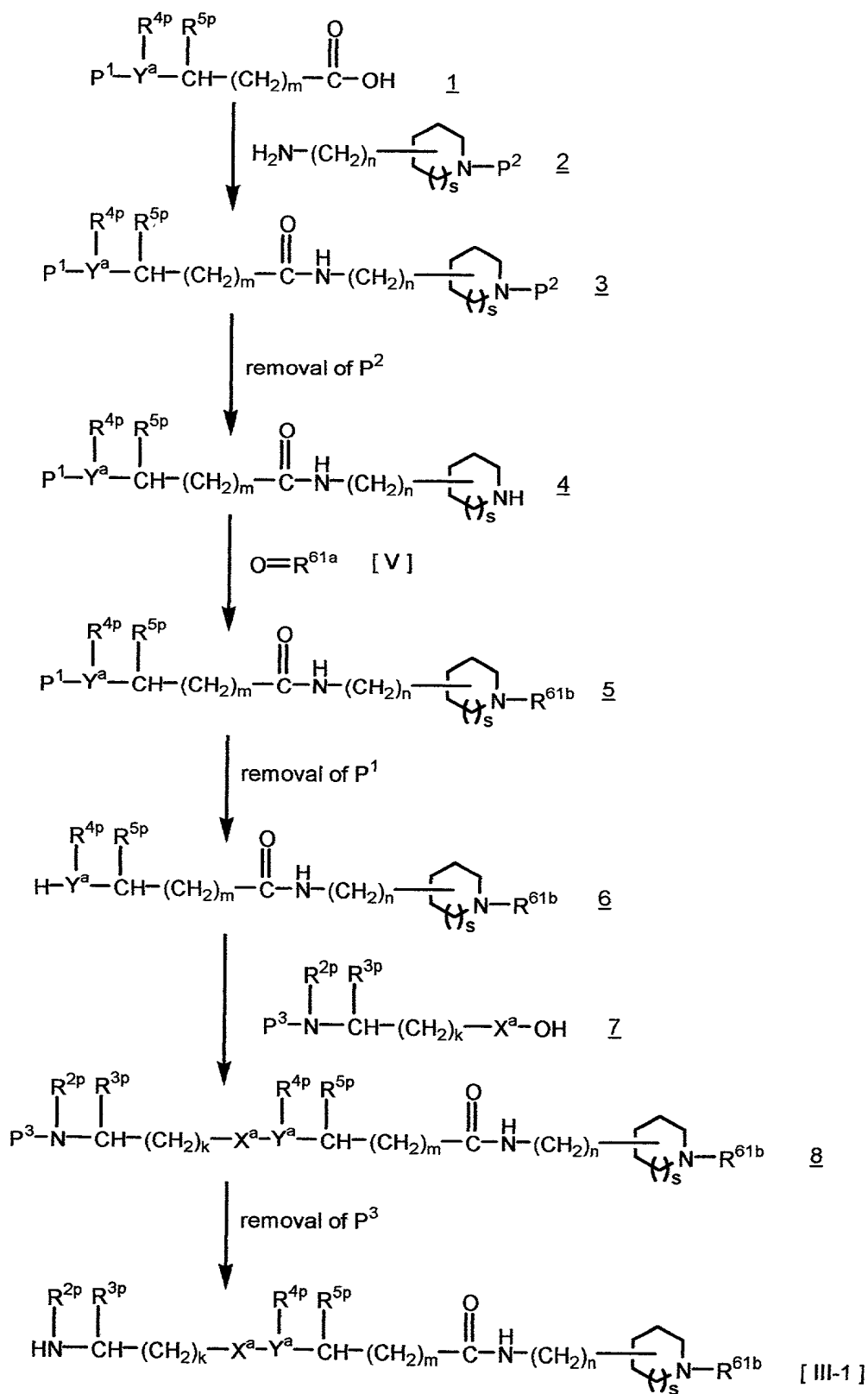
For removing the protective groups and other post-treatments, those methods as described in the explanation of the production process 1 are applicable as they are, and for changing anions, the method as described as to above production process 4 is
25 applicable as it is.

Isolation and purification of those compounds of the general formulae [I-1], [I-2], [I-3] or [I-4] which are obtained in above processes can be accomplished by customarily practiced separation means such as column chromatography using silica gel, adsorptive resins and the
30 like, thin-layer chromatography, liquid chromatography, solvent extraction or recrystallization-precipitation, applied singly or in combination.

Compounds of the general formula [I-1] or [I-2] are

convertible to pharmaceutically acceptable salts by customary means and conversely, conversion from the salts to free compounds can also be conducted following customary means.

- As those compounds represented by general formulae [III], [III],
5 [IV-1a], [V], [VI-1], [VI-2] or [VII], commercial products may be used, or
they can be prepared by methods which are described in literature
references (cf. M. Bodansky and M.A. Ondetti, Peptide Synthesis,
Interscience, New York, 1966; F.M. Finn and K. Hofmann, The
10 Proteins, Vol. 2, ed. by H. Nenrath and R. L. Hill, Academic Press Inc.,
New York, 1976; Nobuo Izumiya, et al., Peptide Gosei (synthesis),
Maruzen Co., 1975; and Official Patent KOKAI (laid-open) Gazette,
KOKAI No. Sho 62(1987)-215588), methods analogous to the above,
methods described in the following or those used in working and
referential examples given in this specification.
- 15 Production method A



[in the above formulae, P¹ and P³ signify protective groups of amino or imino group; P² signifies a protective group of imino group; X^a signifies carbonyl group; Y^a signifies nitrogen atom; and k, m, n, R^{2p}, R^{3p}, R^{4p}, R^{5p}, R^{61a}, R^{61b} and s have the earlier defined significations].

5 This production method is that for producing the compounds represented by the general formula [III-1], according to which the compounds of the general formula [III-1] can be produced by the steps of having a compound of the general formula 2 act on a compound of
10 the general formula 1 to form a compound of the general formula 3; removing therefrom the protective group P² to form a compound 4 on which a compound of the general formula [V] is acted to form a compound of the general formula 5; removing therefrom the protective group P¹ to form a compound 6 on which a compound of the general
15 formula 7 is acted to form a compound of the general formula 8; and finally removing therefrom the protective group P³.

The step of preparing a compound 3 from a compound 1 and that of preparing a compound 3 from a compound 1 can each be conducted similarly to the step in the production process 1 of reacting
20 a carboxylic acid of the general formula [II] or salt or reactive derivative thereof with a compound of the general formula [III] or salt thereof, and hence the reaction conditions earlier described about the reaction can be applied.

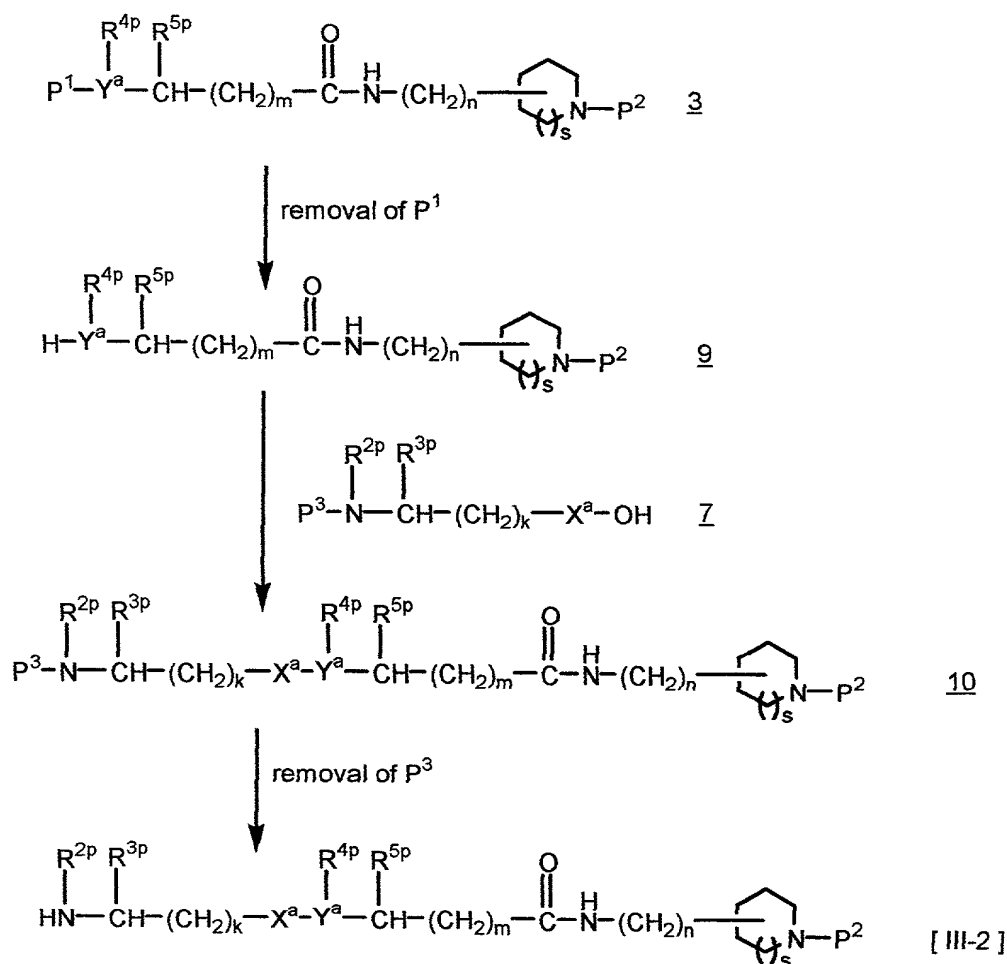
As examples of the protective groups P¹, P² or P³ for amino or
25 imino group, those used as to the production process 1 can be named.

Steps for removing said protective groups can each be conducted following those methods taught in the literature references cited in respect of said production process 1.

The step of producing a compound 5 from a compound 4 can
30 be conducted in the manner similar to the step of reacting a compound of the general formula [IV-1a] or salt thereof with a compound of the general formula [V] in the production process 2, and hence similar conditions are applicable as the reaction conditions.

Furthermore, as those compounds expressed by the general formulae 1, 2 or 7, either those chemicals on the market may be used or they may be prepared according to known processes, those described in the working or referential examples given in this specification or those analogous thereto, if necessary in suitable combinations.

Production method B



10

[in which k, m, n, P¹, P², P³, R^{2p}, R^{3p}, R^{4p}, R^{5p}, s, X^a and Y^a have the earlier defined significations].

This production method is that for preparing the compounds represented by the general formula [III-2]. According to this method, the compounds of the general formula [III-2] can be produced by the

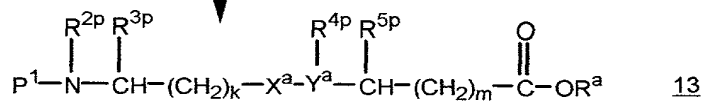
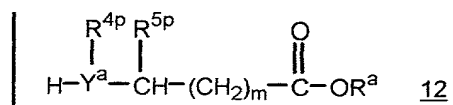
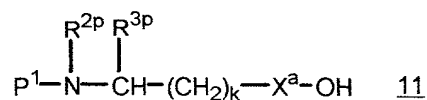
15

steps of converting a compound of the general formula 3 to one of the
general formula 9 by removing the protective group P¹ from the
former; having a compound of the general formula 7 act on said
compound 9 to form a compound of the general formula 10; and finally
5 removing the protective group P³ from said compound 10.

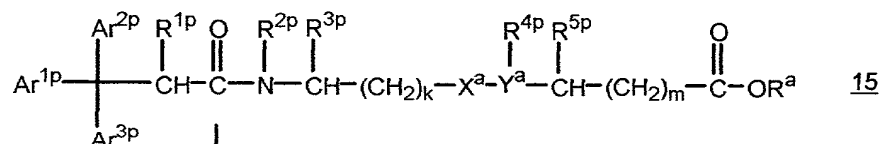
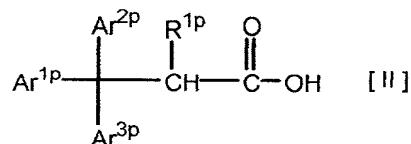
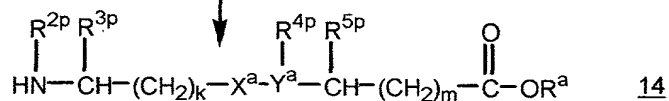
The step of preparing a compound 10 from a compound 9 can
be conducted similarly to the step in the production process 1 of
reacting a carboxylic acid of the general formula [II] or salt or reactive
derivative thereof with a compound of the general formula [III] or salt
10 thereof, and hence the reaction conditions earlier described about the
reaction can be applied.

Steps for removing the protective groups of amino or imino,
which are expressed as P¹ or P³ can each be conducted following those
methods taught in the literature references cited in respect of said
15 production process 1.

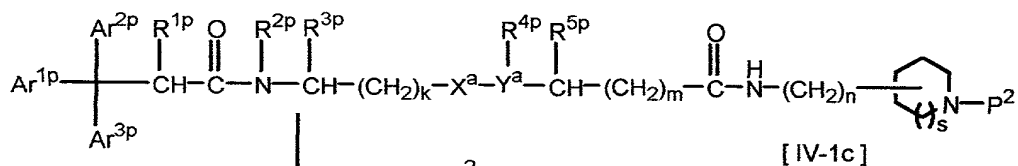
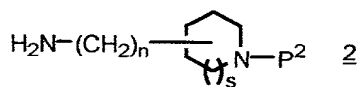
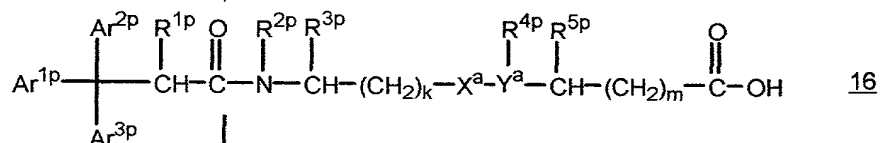
Production method C



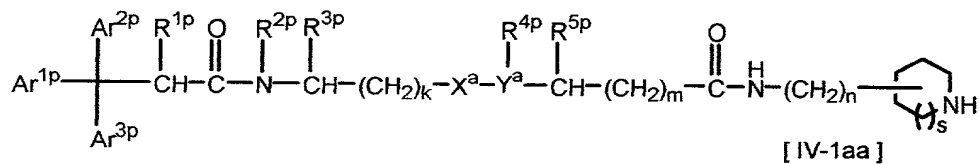
removal of P¹



removal of R^a



removal of P²



[in which R^a stands for lower alkyl; and Ar^{1p} , Ar^{2p} , Ar^{3p} , k , m , n , P^1 , P^2 , R^{1p} , R^{2p} , R^{3p} , R^{4p} , R^{5p} , s , X^a and Y^a have the earlier defined significations]

This production method is that for producing the compounds
5 represented by the general formula [IV-1aa], according to which the
compounds of the general formula [IV-1aa] can be produced by the
steps of having a compound of the general formula 12 act on a
compound of the general formula 11 to form a compound of the
general formula 13; removing therefrom the protective group P^1 to
10 form a compound 14 on which a compound of the general formula [III]
is acted to form a compound of the general formula 15; removing
therefrom the lower alkyl R^a to form a compound 16 on which a
compound of the general formula 2 is acted to form a compound of the
general formula [IV-1c]; and finally removing therefrom the protective
15 group P^2 .

The step of preparing a compound 13 from a compound 11,
that of preparing a compound 15 from a compound 14 and that of
preparing a compound [IV-1c] from a compound 16 can each be
conducted similarly to the step in the production process 1 of reacting
20 a carboxylic acid of the general formula [III] or salt or reactive
derivative thereof with a compound of the general formula [III] or salt
thereof, and hence the reaction conditions earlier described about the
reaction can be applied.

Steps for removing said protective groups of amino or imino,
25 which are expressed as P^1 or P^2 , and for removing the lower alkyl
expressed as R^a can each be conducted following those methods
taught in the literature references cited in respect of said production
process 1.

Furthermore, as those compounds expressed by the general
30 formulae 11 or 12, either those chemicals on the market may be used
or they may be prepared according to known processes, those
described in the working or referential examples given in this
specification or those analogous thereto, if necessary in suitable

combinations.

Utility of those compounds of the present invention is demonstrated by the following results of the tests on inhibition of binding to muscarinic receptors and those on antagonism against various muscarinic receptors.

Tests on inhibition of binding to muscarinic receptors

These tests were performed according to a modification of the method of Hargreaves, et al. (Br. J. Pharmacol. 107: 494-501, 1992). Namely, muscarinic acetylcholine receptors of human m_1 , m_2 , m_3 , m_4 and m_5 expressed in CHO cells (Receptor Biology, Inc.) were incubated with 0.2 nM [3 H]-N-methylscopolamine (82Ci/mmol, New England Nuclear, Inc.) and a test compound to be tested in 0.5 ml of 50 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, 1 mM EDTA solution (pH 7.4) for 120 minutes at room temperature (about 20-25°C), followed by suction filtration over a glass filter (UniFilter plate-GF/C; Packard). Then the filter was washed four times with 1 ml of ice-cold Tris-HCl buffer and dried at 50°C for an hour. After adding a scintillator (Microscinti 0; Packard), the radioactivity of [3 H]-N-methylscopolamine binding to the filter was counted with a microplate scintillation counter (TopCountTM; Packard). Non-specific receptor binding of [3 H]-N-methylscopolamine was measured by adding 1 μ M N-methylscopolamine. According to the method of Cheng and Prusoff (Biochem. Pharmacol. 22: 3099-3108, 1973), the binding affinity of a compound of the present invention for muscarinic receptors is expressed by dissociation constant (K_i) which is calculated from the concentration (IC_{50}) of the test compound which achieves 50% inhibition of binding of [3 H]-N-methylscopolamine, the labeled ligand. The results are shown in Tables 1-1 and 1-2.

TABLE 1-1

Inhibitory Effects on Binding to Muscarinic
m₁, m₂, m₃, m₄ and m₅ Receptors

Compound	Ki(nM)					Selectivity (times)			
	m ₁	m ₂	m ₃	m ₄	m ₅	m ₁ /m ₃	m ₂ /m ₃	m ₄ /m ₃	m ₅ /m ₃
Example 6	860	250	1.8	66	82	480	140	37	46
Example 12	140	34	0.38	18	32	370	89	47	84
Example 19	270	30	0.75	8.1	19	360	40	11	25
Example 28	130	85	1.2	36	220	110	71	30	180

TABLE 1-2

Inhibitory Effects on Binding to Muscarinic
m₁, m₂, m₃, m₄ and m₅ Receptors

Compound	Ki(nM)					Selectivity (times)			
	m ₁	m ₂	m ₃	m ₄	m ₅	m ₁ /m ₃	m ₂ /m ₃	m ₄ /m ₃	m ₅ /m ₃
Example 133	>2500	810	3.2	140	1600	>780	250	44	500
Example 144	110	110	1.3	27	230	85	85	21	180
Example 146	1200	1000	15	360	490	80	67	24	33
Example 150	150	490	4.7	310	850	32	100	66	180
Example 151	450	460	3.5	74	890	130	130	21	250

As is clear from the results indicated in above Tables 1-1 and 1-2, those compounds of the present invention exhibited far higher binding-inhibitory activity to m₃ receptor, than to m₁, m₂, m₄ and m₅ receptors.

Tests for antagonism to muscarinic receptors (in vitro)

1) Test for antagonism to M₂ receptor in isolated rat right atrium

The test was performed according to a conventional method.

Male SD strain rats (weighing 300-500 g) were killed by exsanguination, and from each of them the right atrium was isolated. Each preparation was isometrically suspended in a Magnus tube filled with 20 ml of Krebs-Henseleit solution (gassed with 95% O₂ - 5% CO₂ and kept at 32°C) with an initial tension of 0.5 g. The heart rate was recorded with a heart rate counter. After the preparation was equilibrated for 30 minutes, carbachol (10⁻⁹ to 10⁻⁶ M) was cumulatively administered from a low concentration to three-fold increasing doses and accompanying decrease in heart rate was measured to obtain a dose-response curve for the control experiment. After the preparation was washed with fresh solution to restore the heart rate, a test compound was administered thereto. Ten minutes later, carbachol was cumulatively administered again. Responses to carbachol were expressed as percentages based on the heart rate before administration of carbachol as 100%. The antagonistic potency (K_B value) of the test compound was determined from the degree of shift of the dose-response curve attributable to the treatment with individual test compound of the present invention. The results were as shown in Tables 2-1 and 2-2.

2) Test for antagonism to the airway M₃ receptor in isolated rat trachea

The test was performed according to a conventional method. Male SD strain rats (weighing 300-500 g) were killed by exsanguination, and from each of them the trachea was isolated. Annular segments (2 mm wide) were cut out from the trachea and cut transversely at the anterior cartilage part to make open ring preparation. Each preparation was suspended in a Magnus tube filled with 5 ml of Krebs-Henseleit solution (gassed with 95% O₂ - 5% CO₂ and kept at 32°C) with an initial tension of 1.0 g and a resting tension of 0.6 g. The tension of the preparation was recorded isometrically. After being equilibrated for an hour, the preparation was made to contract twice by treatment with 10⁻⁴ M carbachol, and the second contraction induced by carbachol was used as the reference

contraction. After washing the preparation with fresh solution to restore it to the base line, a test compound was administered thereto (or no treatment was given). Ten minutes later, carbachol (10^{-8} to 10^{-3} M) was cumulatively administered in three-fold increasing doses to obtain a dose-response curve. The dose-response curve was plotted by expressing responses as percentages based on the reference contraction of the preparation as 100%. The antagonistic potency (K_B value) of the test compound was determined from the degree of shift of the dose-response curve attributable to the treatment with the test compound. The results were as shown in Tables 2-1 and 2-2.

TABLE 2-1
Antagonism to Muscarinic Receptors (in vitro)

Compound	K_B (nM)		Selectivity (times)
	Right Atrium M_2	Trachea M_3	M_2/M_3
Example 12	160	2.3	70

TABLE 2-2
Antagonism to Muscarinic Receptors (in vitro)

Compound	K_B (nM)		Selectivity (times)
	Right Atrium M_2	Trachea M_3	M_2/M_3
Example 133	41	0.71	58

As is clear from the results indicated in above Tables 2-1 and 2-2, the compounds of the present invention exhibited far more powerful antagonism to the trachea M_3 receptor than to the right atrium M_2 receptor. Therefore, the compounds of the present invention are more selective for trachea M_3 receptor.

Tests for antagonism against muscarinic receptors (in vivo)

1) Test for antagonism to M₁ receptor (inhibitory effects on McNeil-A-343-induced vasopressor reaction in cervical vertebrae-separated rats)

5 Male SD strain rats (weighing 300-500g) were anesthetized with intraperitoneal administration of pentobarbital (50 mg/kg). Each rat's airway was cannulated by laryngotomy. Also by femoral incision, femoral artery and vein were isolated each and cannulated, which were used as routes for heart rate counting and chemical
10 administration, respectively. Using a pulmotor for small animals (Type 7025, Ugo Basile Co.), artificial respiration was conducted under the conditions of ventilation rate of 6 ml/kg per breath and respiration rate of 90 breaths/min. The heart rate and blood pressure variations were measured with a heart rate counter (AT-601
15 G, Nippon Kodon Co.) and a tonometer (AP-641G, Nippon Kodon Co.), via a pressure transducer (DX-312, Nippon Kodon Co.). After the blood pressure was stabilized, the cervical vertebrae was separated with an injection needle pricked from the occipital region. After the average blood pressure dropped to not higher than 70 mmHg, test
20 compound (test compound-treated group) or isotonic sodium chloride solution (control group) was intravenously administered. Five (5) minutes thereafter, McNeil-A-343 (0.3 mg/kg) was intravenously administered, and whereby induced hypertension variation was recorded. In this experiment one-dose evaluation per one animal
25 was conducted. The inhibitory effect (inhibition ratio) of the test compound on the McNeil-A-343-induced vasopressor reaction was determined by the following equation:

30 Inhibition ratio (%) =

$$\left(1 - \frac{\text{blood pressure variation in test compound-treated group}}{\text{blood pressure variation in control group}}\right) \times 100$$

The 50% inhibition dose (ED_{50} ; $\mu\text{g/kg}$) was calculated from the inhibition ratio of each dose of the tested compound. The results were as shown in Tables 3-1 and 3-2 as the antagonism to M_1 receptor of the tested compounds.

5

2) Test for antagonism to M_2 receptor (inhibitory effects to acetylcholine-induced bradycardia reaction in rats)

Male SD strain rats (weighing 300-500 g) were anesthetized with urethane (1g/kg) and α -chloralose (50 mg/kg) administered intraperitoneally. The airway, carotid artery and vein of each rat were isolated by laryngotomy and cannulated. The carotid artery and vein cannulae were made the routes for heart rate counting and drug administration. After suppressing the rats' spontaneous respiration by hypodermic administration of succinylcholine (5 mg/body), artificial ventilation was conducted under the conditions of ventilation rate of 6 ml/kg per breath and respiration rate of 90 breaths/min., using a pulmotor for small animals (Model 681, Harvard Co.). The variations in heart rate and blood pressure were measured with a heart rate counter (AP-601G, Nippon Kodon Co.) and a tonometer (AP-641G, Nippon Kodon Co.), via a pressure transducer (DX-312, Nippon Kodon Co.). After about 10 minutes' stabilization period, heart rate change was induced by intravenous administration of acetylcholine (10 $\mu\text{g/kg}$), and the mean value of the change was recorded as the value before the drug administration (pre-value) of the body. After calculating the pre-values, the test compound (test compound-treated group) or isotonic sodium chloride solution (control group) was intravenously administered. Five minutes thereafter, acetylcholine was intravenously administered and whereby induced change in the heart rate was recorded. In this experiment, one-dosage evaluation was conducted per one animal of the tested rats. The change in acetylcholine-induced bradycardia reaction (% of pre-value) caused by the test compound and isotonic sodium chloride solution was determined by the following Equation 1:

Equation 1:

Percent of pre-value =

$$\frac{\text{heart rate change after administration of test compound (isotonic sodium chloride solution)}}{\text{heart rate change before administration (pre-value) of test compound (isotonic sodium chloride solution)}} \times 100$$

The inhibitory effect (inhibition ratio) of each test compound on the acetylcholine-induced bradycardia reaction was determined according to the following Equation 2:

Equation 2:

$$\text{Inhibition ratio (\%)} = \left(1 - \frac{\text{\% of pre-value (test compound-treated group)}}{\text{\% of pre-value (control group)}} \right) \times 100$$

Fifty (50%) inhibition dose (ED₅₀; µg/kg) was calculated from the inhibition ratio of each dose of the tested compound. The results were as shown in Tables 3-1 and 3-2 as the antagonism to M₂ receptor of tested compounds.

3) Test for antagonism to muscarinic M₃ receptor (inhibitory effects on acetylcholine-induced airway resistance-increasing reaction in rats)

Male SD strain rats (weighing 300-500 g) were anesthetized with urethane (1 g/kg) and α-chloralose (50 mg/kg) administered intraperitoneally. The airway and carotid artery of each rat were isolated by laryngotomy and cannulated. The carotid artery cannula was used as the test compound administration route. After suppressing spontaneous respiration by hypodermic administration of

succinylcholine (5 mg/body), the rats were transferred into
 Plethysmograph-box (PLYAN, Buxco) and artificially ventilated under
 the conditions of ventilation rate of 6 ml/kg per breath and respiration
 rate of 90 breaths/min., using a pulmotor for small animals (Model
 5 681, Harvard Co.). Measurements of air rate and intracellular
 pressure, calculation of airway resistance and lung compliance and
 their recording were conducted with lung function analyzer (Model 6,
 Buxco). After about 10 minutes' stabilization period, the change in
 airway resistance induced by intravenous administration of
 10 acetylcholine (50 μ g/kg) was measured twice at 5 minutes' interval.
 The change in airway resistance induced by the second acetylcholine
 administration was recorded as the pre-administration of the tested
 rat (pre-value). Five (5) minutes after the second
 acetylcholine-induced reaction measurement, the test compound or
 15 isotonic sodium chloride solution was intravenously administered.
 Five (5) minutes thereafter, acetylcholine was administered and
 whereby induced airway resistance change was measured. In this
 experiment, one-dosage evaluation was conducted per one animal of
 the tested rats. The changes in acetylcholine-induced airway
 20 resistance-increasing reaction (% of pre-value) caused by the tested
 compound and isotonic sodium chloride solution were calculated by
 the following Equation 1:

Equation 1:

$$\begin{array}{l}
 25 \quad \text{Percent of pre-value} = \\
 \quad \frac{\text{change in airway resistance after administration of test} \\
 \quad \text{compound (isotonic sodium chloride solution)}}{\text{change in airway resistance before administration of} \\
 30 \quad \text{test compound (isotonic sodium chloride solution)}} \times 100
 \end{array}$$

The inhibitory effect (inhibition ratio) of each test compound
 on the acetylcholine-induced airway resistance-increasing reaction

was determined according to the following Equation 2.

Equation 2:

$$\text{Inhibition ratio (\%)} = \left(1 - \frac{\% \text{ of pre-value (test compound-treated group)}}{\% \text{ of pre-value (control group)}} \right) \times 100$$

Fifty (50)% inhibition dose (ED₅₀; µg/kg) was calculated from the inhibition ratio of each dose of the tested compound. The results were as shown in Tables 3-1 and 3-2 as the antagonism to M₃ receptor of the tested compounds.

TABLE 3-1

Antagonism to Muscarinic Receptors (in vivo)

Compound	ED ₅₀ (µg/kg, i.v.)			Selectivity (times)	
	vasopressor M ₁	bradycardia M ₂	Airway constriction M ₃	M ₁ /M ₃	M ₂ /M ₃
Example 12	>3000	1550	15	>200	100
atoropine	19	5.2	4.3	4.4	1.2

TABLE 3-2
Antagonism to Muscarinic Receptors (in vivo)

Compound	ED ₅₀ (μg/kg, i.v.)			Selectivity (times)	
	vasopressor M ₁	bradycardia M ₂	Airway constriction M ₃	M ₁ /M ₃	M ₂ /M ₃
Example 133	>300	114	2.1	>143	54
atropine	19	5.2	4.3	4.4	1.2

5

As is clear from the results as shown in above Tables 3-1 and 3-2, the compounds of the present invention exhibited high M₃ selectivity also in vivo.

- 10 4) Test for antagonism to M₃ receptor (bronchodilation in anesthetized dogs)

The bronchodilation action of inhaled test compound was evaluated by measuring the compounds' inhibitory action on respiratory resistance-increasing reaction induced by a methacholine provocation test. For the experiment, 12 to 36 months old male beagle dogs (weighing 10-15 kg) were used. After being anesthetized by intravenous pentobarbital administration (30 mg/kg), the dogs were intubated cannulae in their trachea. After their respiration became stable, the cannulae were connected with Astograph (TCK-6100H, Chest) and a methacholine provocation test by 3Hz oscillation method was conducted. The inhaling inducer, methacholine, was diluted with isotonic sodium chloride solution in 10-grade concentration levels starting from 40,000 μg/ml, successively as 20,000 to 10,000, 5,000, 2500, 1250, 625, 312.5, 156 and 78 μg/ml. The dogs were caused to inhale these methacholine solutions each for one minute starting from the one of low concentration with the nebulizer in the Astograph, and changes in respiratory resistance were continuously plotted. The methacholine concentration at which

the respiratory resistance increased to twice the initial value was recorded as the methacholine reaction threshold value. Before evaluating the test compounds, the methacholine reaction threshold value¹⁾ under no drug treatment was measured at least twice at a week's interval, to select the dogs showing reproducible reaction.

The inhaling administration of each test compound (1 mg/ml) was conducted for 10 minutes under pentobarbital anesthetization (30 mg/kg, i.v.), with the nebulizer in the Astograph. Thereafter pentobarbital was additionally administered when necessary, to maintain the anesthetized condition. Four hours after the administration, a methacholine provocation test was conducted, to measure the methacholine reaction threshold value²⁾ after administration of each test compound. The bronchodilator activity (shift value) of each tested compound was determined according to the following equation:

Shift value =

methacholine reaction threshold value¹⁾
after drug administration

methacholine reaction threshold value²⁾
without drug administration

TABLE 4
Antagonism to Muscarinic Receptor
(in vivo: Anesthetized Dogs)

Compound	Shift (fold)
	Airway constriction M ₃
Example 133	20.2
Example 151	>40.0

As is clearly demonstrated in above Table 4, the compounds of the present invention exhibited powerful bronchodilation action and long duration of the action.

As above, the compounds of formula [I] of the present invention exhibit potent and selective antagonistic activity against muscarinic M_3 receptor. Hence, they can be administered to patients orally or parenterally as safe pharmaceuticals exhibiting little side effects, for treating, in particular, such respiratory diseases as chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases, chronic bronchitis, asthma, chronic respiratory tract obstruction, fibroid lung, pulmonary emphysema and rhinitis; digestive diseases such as irritable bowel syndrome, convulsive colitis, gastroduodenal ulcer, convulsion or hyperanalkinesia of digestive tract, diverticulitis and pain accompanying contraction of smooth muscles of the digestive system; urinary diseases accompanied by dysuria like urinary incontinence, urgency and pollakiuria in nervous pollakiuria, neurogenic bladder, nocturnal enuresis, unstable bladder, cystospasm and chronic cystitis; and motion sickness.

For actual use of those compounds of the present invention for therapeutic treatment or prophylaxis of diseases as exemplified above, they may be combined with pharmaceutically acceptable adjuvants in the usual manner to formulate pharmaceutical preparations of forms suitable for administration. For this purpose, there can be used a variety of adjuvants which are commonly used in the field of pharmaceuticals. Such adjuvants include, for example, gelatin, lactose, sucrose, titanium oxide, starch, crystalline cellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulosecarboxymethylcellulosecorn starch, microcrystalline wax, white petrolatum, magnesium aluminate metasilicate, anhydrous calcium phosphate, citric acid, trisodium citrate, hydroxypropyl cellulose, sorbitol, sorbitan fatty acid ester, polysorbate, sucrose fatty acid ester, polyoxyethylene, hardened castor oil, polyvinylpyrrolidone, magnesium stearate, light anhydrous silicic acid, talc, vegetable oil, benzyl alcohol, gum arabic, propylene

glycol, polyalkylene glycol, cyclodextrin and hydroxypropylcyclodextrin.

The dosage forms of pharmaceutical preparations formulated using these adjuvants include solid preparations such as tablets, capsules, granules, powders and suppositories; and liquid preparations such as syrups, elixirs and injections. These preparations may be formulated according to conventional techniques well-known in the field of pharmaceuticals. Liquid preparations may be in a form which is dissolved or suspended in water or other suitable medium prior to use. In particular, injections may be in the form of a solution or suspension in physiological saline solution or a glucose solution, or in powder form to be dissolved or suspended in physiological saline or a glucose solution prior to use. If desired, such injections may contain buffer agents and/or preservatives.

As preparations for oral administration, such formulation forms, besides ordinary tablets, capsules, granules, powders and the like, aerosols or dry powders for inhalation, elixiers or suspensions containing spices or coloring agents may be employed.

In these pharmaceutical preparations, a compound in accordance with the present invention may be present at a ratio of from 1.0 to 100% by weight, preferably 1.0 to 60% by weight, based on the total weight of individual preparation. These pharmaceutical preparations may additionally contain other therapeutically effective compounds.

When the compounds of the present invention are used as drugs, their dosage level and dosage schedule may vary according to the sex, age, body weight, severity of symptoms of individual patient, type and range of the desired therapeutic effect, and the like. Generally for oral administration, they are preferably administered in a daily dose of 0.1 to 100 mg/kg for adults and this daily dose may be given at a time or in several divided doses. For parenteral administration, they are preferably administered in a daily dose of 0.001 to 10 mg/kg which may be given at a time or in several divided

doses.

Optimum Embodiments for Practicing the Invention

Hereinafter the present invention is more specifically explained with reference to working examples, it being understood that the examples are in no way limitative of the scope of the invention.

Example 1

N-(2-{3-(((3R)-1-(2-methylbutyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide
(Step 1)

Synthesis of ethyl 3-(2-((tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino)-acetylaminopropionate

To a solution of 1.5 g of ethyl 3-aminopropionate monohydrochloride and 1.7 g of 2-((tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino)acetic acid in 50 ml of chloroform, 1.6 g of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate, 2.3 g of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide monohydrochloride and 1.4 ml of triethylamine were added at room temperature by the order stated, and stirred for 2 hours at the same temperature. The reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform, and washed successively with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, 10% aqueous citric acid solution and saturated saline solution, by the order stated, and dried on anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by means of silica gel column chromatography (eluting solvent: hexane/ethyl acetate = 1/4) to provide 2.0 g of the title compound.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of ethyl 3-((2-aminoacetyl)amino)propionate monohydrochloride

2.0 Grams of ethyl 3-(2-((tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino)-acetylaminopropionate were dissolved in 30 ml of 10% hydrochloric acid-methanol and stirred for 15 hours at room temperature. Upon

distilling the reaction liquid off under reduced pressure, 1.52 g of the title compound was obtained.

(Step 3)

Synthesis of ethyl 3-(2-((3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)amino)-
5 acetylamino)propionate

To a solution of 1.52 g of ethyl 3-((2-aminoacetyl)amino)-
propionate monohydrochloride and 2.18 g of 3,3,3-triphenylpropionic
acid in 20 ml of chloroform, 1.46 g of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole
monohydrate, 2.07 g of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-
10 carbodiimide monohydrochloride and 2.0 ml of triethylamine were
successively added at room temperature by the order stated, followed
by 2 hours' stirring at the same temperature. The reaction liquid
was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed successively with aqueous
saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, 1N-hydrochloric acid and
15 water, and filtered through cerite. The filtrate was dried on
anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under
reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by means of
silica gel column chromatography (eluting solvent: hexane/ethyl
acetate = 4/1 — chloroform/methanol = 10/1) to provide 1.7 g of the
20 title compound.

(Step 4)

Synthesis of 3-(2-((3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)amino)-
acetylamino)propionic acid

1.7 Grams of ethyl 3-(2-((3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)amino)-
25 acetylamino)propionate was dissolved in a mixed liquid consisting of
70 ml of tetrahydrofuran and 20 ml of methanol. To the solution 5.0
ml of 4N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution was added at room
temperature, followed by an hour's stirring at the same temperature.
The reaction liquid was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the
30 residue was rendered acidic by addition of 1N hydrochloric acid,
extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated saline solution
and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Upon distilling the
solvent off under reduced pressure, 1.10 g of the title compound was

obtained.

(Step 5)

Synthesis of

N-(2-{3-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

To a solution of 0.55 g of

(3R)-3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine and 1.1 g of 3-(2-((3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)amino)acetylaminopropionic acid in 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, 0.52 g of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate and 0.75 g of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide monohydrochloride were successively added at room temperature, and stirred for 2 hours at the same temperature. Then 2.0 ml of triethylamine and 10 ml of chloroform were added at room temperature, followed by an hour's stirring. The reaction liquid was distilled off under reduced pressure, diluted with ethyl acetate, washed successively with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, 10% aqueous citric acid solution and saturated saline solution, and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by means of silica gel column chromatography (eluting solvent: chloroform/methanol = 19/1) to provide 1.41 g of the title compound.

(Step 6)

Synthesis of N-(2-{3-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide monohydrochloride

Using N-(2-{3-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide, the title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 2 of Example 1.

(Step 7)

Synthesis of N-(2-{3-((3R)-1-(2-methylbutyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

To a solution of 200 mg of N-(2-{3-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)-amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide monohydrochloride in 10 ml of tetrahydrofuran, 0.10 ml of 2-methylbutanal and 230 mg of sodium triacetoxyborohydrate were successively added at room temperature, followed by 2 hours' stirring at the same temperature. The reaction liquid was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed successively with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution and saturated saline solution, and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the resultant residue was purified by means of silica gel column chromatography (eluting solvent: chloroform/methanol = 19/1 – 4/1), to provide 158 mg of the title compound as a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 0.89(3H, d, $J=6.6\text{Hz}$), 0.90(3H, d, $J=6.6\text{Hz}$), 0.95-1.20(2H, m), 1.32-1.50(1H, m), 1.50-2.42(11H, m), 2.60-2.95(2H, m), 3.05-3.25(2H, m), 3.34-3.50(2H, m), 3.55(2H, d, $J=6.6\text{Hz}$), 3.56-3.72(2H, m), 5.75-5.98(1H, m), 6.29-6.65(2H, m), 7.10-7.38(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{48}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 597

Example 2

N-(2-{3-((3R)-1-(2-ethylbutyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl}amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 7 of Example 1, using 2-ethylbutanal. The product was obtained in the form of a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 0.85(6H, t, $J=7.4\text{Hz}$), 0.94-2.46(16H, m), 2.75-3.01(2H, m), 3.01-3.22(2H, m), 3.32-3.43(2H, m), 3.56(2H, d, $J=5.6\text{Hz}$), 3.58-3.71(2H, m), 5.80-6.05(1H, m), 6.33-6.75(2H, m), 7.13-7.40(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 611

Example 3

N-(2-{3-(((3R)-1-(2-methylpentyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 7 of Example 1, using 2-methylpentanal. The product was
5 obtained in the form of a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80-0.98(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 0.98-1.18(2\text{H}, \text{m}),$
1.18-1.50(4H, m), 1.51-1.99(10H, m), 2.65-3.26(4H, m),
3.30-3.49(2H, m), 3.56(2H, d, $J=5.4\text{Hz}$), 3.65
(1H, d, $J=15.8\text{Hz}$), 3.66(1H, d, $J=15.8\text{Hz}$), 5.80-6.15(1H, m),
10 6.32-6.75(2H, m), 7.12-7.40(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 611

Example 4

N-(2-{3-(((3R)-1-propyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 7 of Example 1, using propionaldehyde. The product was
15 obtained in the form of a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.88(3\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.4\text{Hz}), 0.82-1.05$
20 (1H, m), 1.21-2.05(8H, m), 2.20-2.45(4H, m), 2.69-2.91(2H, m),
2.98-3.25(2H, m), 3.32-3.45(2H, m), 3.49
(1H, dd, $J=5.5, 16.7\text{Hz}$), 3.60(1H, dd, $J=5.5, 16.7\text{Hz}$), 3.63
(1H, d, $J=14.9\text{Hz}$), 3.65(1H, d, $J=14.9\text{Hz}$), 5.75-5.90(1H, m),
5.90-6.10(1H, m), 6.20-6.32(1H, m), 7.15-7.37(15H, m)

25 FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 569

Example 5

N-(2-{3-(((3R)-1-butyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 7 of Example 1, using n-butylaldehyde. The product was
30 obtained in the form of a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.91(3\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.3\text{Hz}),$

0.80-2.06(10H, m), 2.10-2.64(5H, m), 2.90-3.30(4H, m),
3.37(2H, q, J=5.9Hz), 3.45-3.65(2H, m), 3.64
(1H, d, J=15.1Hz), 3.67(1H, d, J=15.1Hz), 6.31-6.49(1H, m),
6.58-6.83(2H, m), 7.10-7.40(15H, m)

5 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₆H₄₆N₄O₃+H)⁺): 583

Example 6

N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-pentyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

10 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Step 7 of Example 1, using valeraldehyde. The product was obtained
in the form of a colorless solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.89(3H, t, J=6.9Hz),
0.91-2.70(17H, m), 2.96-3.25(4H, m), 3.37(2H, q, J=6.0Hz),
15 3.57(2H, d, J=5.4Hz), 3.65(1H, d, J=15.1Hz), 3.66
(1H, d, J=15.1Hz), 6.53(1H, t, J=5.4Hz), 6.84(1H, t, J=5.8Hz),
6.92(1H, t, J=5.3Hz), 7.09-7.36(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₇H₄₈N₄O₃+H)⁺): 597

20 Example 7

N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-hexyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Step 7 of Example 1, using n-hexanal. The product was obtained in
25 the form of a colorless solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.88(3H, t, J=6.7Hz),
0.91-1.82(11H, m), 1.95-2.70(8H, m), 2.95-3.20(4H, m),
3.37(2H, q, J=6.0Hz), 3.57(2H, d, J=5.7Hz), 3.65
(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 3.67(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 6.38-6.50(1H, m),
30 6.67-6.88(2H, m), 7.10-7.37(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₈H₅₀N₄O₃+H)⁺): 611

Example 8

N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-heptyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 7 of Example 1, using n-heptanal. The product was obtained in the form of a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.88(3\text{H}, \text{t}, J=6.7\text{Hz}), 0.90\text{-}2.70(21\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.95\text{-}3.18(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.38(2\text{H}, \text{q}, J=6.1\text{Hz}), 3.55(1\text{H}, \text{dd}, J=5.6, 16.5\text{Hz}), 3.59(1\text{H}, \text{dd}, J=5.6, 16.5\text{Hz}), 3.65(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=15.1\text{Hz}), 3.67(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=15.1\text{Hz}), 6.39(1\text{H}, \text{t}, J=5.3\text{Hz}), 6.59\text{-}6.85(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.10\text{-}7.38(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{52}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 625

Example 9

N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-octyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 7 of Example 1, using n-octanal. The product was obtained in the form of a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.73(23\text{H}, \text{m}), 0.88(3\text{H}, \text{t}, J=6.7\text{Hz}), 2.90\text{-}3.25(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.29\text{-}3.48(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.59(2\text{H}, \text{d}, J=5.6\text{Hz}), 3.65(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=15.1\text{Hz}), 3.68(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=15.1\text{Hz}), 6.25\text{-}6.42(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 6.51\text{-}6.5(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.10\text{-}7.38(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{54}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 639

Example 10

N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-nonyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 7 of Example 1, using n-nonanal. The product was obtained in the form of a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.88(3\text{H}, \text{t}, J=6.6\text{Hz}), 0.80\text{-}2.73(25\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.90\text{-}3.25(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.28\text{-}3.50(2\text{H}, \text{m}),$

3.59(2H, d, J=5.6Hz), 3.65(1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 3.68
(1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 6.18-6.40(1H, m), 6.48-6.85(2H, m),
7.07-7.56(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₆N₄O₃+H)⁺): 653

5

Example 11

N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-decyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
10 Step 7 of Example 1, using n-decanal. The product was obtained in
the form of a colorless solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-2.71(30H, m), 2.88-3.25
(4H, m), 3.37(2H, q, J=5.9Hz), 3.57(2H, d, J=5.6Hz), 3.65
(1H, d, J=5.0Hz), 3.67(1H, d, J=5.0Hz), 6.49(1H, t, J=5.3Hz),
15 6.75-6.95(2H, m), 7.11-7.40(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₅₈N₄O₃+H)⁺): 667

Example 12

N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
20 Step 7 of Example 1, using cyclohexanecarbaldehyde. The product
was obtained in the form of a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.81-1.80(17H, m), 1.97-2.08
25 (3H, m), 2.28-2.32(2H, m), 2.59-2.65(2H, m), 3.12-3.17(2H, m),
3.37-3.46(2H, m), 3.51-3.55(2H, m), 3.64(2H, s), 5.60-5.64
(1H, m), 6.10-6.20(1H, m), 6.26-6.30(1H, m),
7.19-7.33(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₅₀N₄O₃+H)⁺): 623

30

Example 13

N-(2-{3-(((3R)-1-(1-cyclohepten-1-yl)methyl)-3-piperidyl)-methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-

triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 7 of Example 1, using 1-cycloheptenecarbaldehyde (cf. WO 9633973). The product was obtained in the form of a colorless solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.95-2.40(21H, m), 2.70-3.25 (4H, m), 3.40(2H, q, J=5.9Hz), 3.56(2H, d, J=5.6Hz), 3.64 (1H, d, J=15.7Hz), 3.66(1H, d, J=15.7Hz), 5.71-6.81(4H, m), 7.09-7.40(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₅₀N₄O₃+H)⁺): 635

Example 14

N-(2-{3-(((3R)-1-(1-cyclononen-1-ylmethyl)-3-piperidyl)-methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}amino-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 7 of Example 1, using 1-cyclononenecarbaldehyde (cf. WO 9804554). The product was obtained in the form of a colorless solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-2.41(25H, m), 2.51-3.47 (6H, m), 3.56(2H, d, J=5.4Hz), 3.65(1H, d, J=15.9Hz), 3.66(1H, d, J=15.9Hz), 5.38-6.83(4H, m), 7.05-7.38(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₅₄N₄O₃+H)⁺): 663

Example 15

N-{2-(3-(((3S)-1-heptyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Steps 5 and 6 of Example 1 and Example 8, using (3S)-3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine. The product was obtained as a colorless solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.88(3H, t, J=6.8Hz), 0.80-2.02 (17H, m), 2.20-2.41(4H, m), 2.70-2.90(2H, m), 2.90-3.20 (2H, m), 3.35-3.45(2H, m), 3.47(1H, dd, J=5.5, 16.6Hz), 3.57(1H, dd, J=5.5, 16.6Hz), 3.62(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 3.65

(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 6.09(1H, t, J=5.3Hz), 6.18-6.35(1H, m),
6.48(1H, t, J=5.6Hz), 7.10-7.39(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₅₂N₄O₃+H)⁺): 625

5 Example 16

N-{2-(3-(((3S)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting
procedures similar to Steps 5 and 6 of Example 1 and Example 12,
10 using (3S)-3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine. The
product was obtained as a pale yellow solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.81-1.80(17H, m), 1.97-2.08
(3H, m), 2.28-2.32(2H, m), 2.59-2.65(2H, m), 3.12-3.17(2H, m),
3.37-3.46(2H, m), 3.51-3.55(2H, m), 3.64(2H, s), 5.60-5.64
15 (1H, m), 6.10(1H, brs), 6.26-6.30(1H, m), 7.19-7.33(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₅₀N₄O₃+H)⁺): 623

Example 17

N-{(1S)-2-(3-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-1-(2-carbamoylethyl)-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-
20 triphenylpropanamide

(Step 1)

Synthesis of 3-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)propanamide

25 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Step 5 of Example 1, using N-benzyloxycarbonyl-β-alanine.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of 3-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino-N-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)propanamide

30 To a solution of 1.84 g of 3-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)propanamide in 2
ml of chloroform, 2 ml of trifluoroacetic acid was added at room
temperature, followed by an hour's stirring at the same temperature.

The reaction liquid was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was rendered basic with 4N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. Extracting the product with chloroform, the product was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Upon distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 1.26 g of the title compound was obtained. (Step 3)

Synthesis of 3-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)propanamide

To a solution of 600 mg of 3-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino-N-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)propanamide in 3 ml of methanol, a solution of 150 mg of sodium cyanoborohydrate and 160 mg of zinc chloride in 8.1 ml of methanol, and 0.30 ml of cyclohexanecarbaldehyde were added at room temperature, followed by an hour's stirring at the same temperature. The reaction liquid was diluted with ethyl acetate and successively washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution and saturated saline, followed by drying over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Upon distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 775 mg of the title compound was obtained. (Step 4)

Synthesis of 3-amino-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)propanamide

To a solution of 770 mg of 3-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)propanamide in 12 ml of methanol, 0.5 ml of 10% hydrochloric acid-methanol and 15 mg of 20% palladium hydroxide-carbon catalyst were added, followed by 44 hours' stirring under 3 atmospheres of hydrogen. Filtering the catalyst off, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was rendered weakly basic with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution. The product was extracted with chloroform and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified by means of silica gel column chromatography (eluting solvent: chloroform-chloroform/methanol/28% aqueous ammonia =

100/10/1) to provide 391 mg of the title compound.

(Step 5)

Synthesis of (2S)-2-amino-N⁵-triphenylmethyl-N¹-
(3-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}amino-3-oxopropyl)-
5 pentanediamide monohydrochloride

The title compound was prepared by procedures similar to
Steps 5-6 of Example 1, using 3-amino-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexyl-
methyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}propanamide and N- α -(tert-butoxy-
carbonyl)- γ -triphenylmethyl-L-glutamine.

10 (Step 6)

Synthesis of N-((1S)-2-(3-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-
piperidyl)methyl}amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-1-(2-carbamoylethyl)-2-
oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

To a solution of 84 mg of (2S)-2-amino-N⁵-triphenylmethyl-
15 N¹-(3-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}amino-3-
oxopropyl)pentanediamide monohydrochloride in 1.5 ml of chloroform,
0.052 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine was added at room
temperature, followed by an hour's stirring at the same temperature.
Then 39 mg of 3,3,3-triphenylpropionic acid, 24 mg of 1-hydroxy-
20 benzotriazole monohydrate and 31 mg of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethyl-
aminopropyl)carbodiimide monohydrochloride were added at room
temperature by the order stated, followed by 17 hours' stirring at the
same temperature. The reaction liquid was rendered weakly basic
with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, extracted with
25 chloroform and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the
solvent off, the resultant residue was dissolved in 1 ml of chloroform,
and to the solution 1 ml of trifluoroacetic acid was added at room
temperature, followed by 20 minutes' stirring at the same
temperature. The reaction liquid was rendered weakly basic with
30 saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, extracted with
chloroform and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent
was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue
was purified with preparative thin layer chromatography

(KieselgelTM60F₂₅₄, Art 5744 (Merck), chloroform/methanol/28% aqueous ammonia = 90/10/1) to provide 43 mg of the title compound as a white solid.

5 ¹H-NMR(CD₃OD, δppm): 0.80-2.00(22H, m), 2.06-2.18
(2H, m), 2.23-2.33(2H, m), 2.73-2.87(2H, m), 2.90-3.08
(2H, m), 3.20-3.38(2H, m), 3.58(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 3.86
(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 3.84-3.91(1H, m), 7.10-7.28(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₅₅N₅O₄+H)⁺): 694

10 Example 18

N-((1R)-2-(3-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-1-(2-carbamoylethyl)-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

(Step 1)

15 Synthesis of 3-amino-N-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)propanamide

The title compound was prepared by procedures similar to Steps 1-4 of Example 17, using 3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine.

20 (Step 2)

Synthesis of N-((1R)-2-(3-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-1-(2-carbamoylethyl)-2-oxoethyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by procedures similar to
25 Steps 5-6 of Example 17 using 3-amino-N-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)propanamide and N-α-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-γ-triphenylmethyl-D-glutamine. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

30 ¹H-NMR(CD₃OD, δppm): 0.80-0.98(3H, m), 1.15-1.32
(3H, m), 1.47-2.00(16H, m), 2.13(2H, d, J=6.9Hz), 2.31
(2H, t, J=6.4Hz), 2.86-2.87(2H, m), 2.98-3.04(2H, m),
3.30-3.37(2H, m), 3.58(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 3.86
(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 3.87-3.91(1H, m), 7.13-7.30(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₅₅N₅O₄+H)⁺): 694

Example 19

5 N-{(1S)-2-(3-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-
amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-1-(1H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl)-2-oxoethyl}-
3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting
procedures similar to Step 5 of Example 17 and Step 3 of Example 1,
using (tert-butoxycarbonyl)-N-imidazole-benzyloxycarbonyl-L-
10 histidine. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.73-2.00(20H, m), 2.02-2.28
(4H, m), 2.55-2.64(1H, m), 2.67-2.98(3H, m), 3.15-3.33
(2H, m), 3.60-3.77(2H, m), 4.25-4.34(1H, m), 6.18-6.40
(2H, m), 6.69(1H, s), 7.15-7.50(16H, m), 7.44(1H, s)

15 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₄N₆O₃+H)⁺): 703

Example 20

20 N-{(1R)-2-(3-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-
3-oxopropyl)amino-1-(1H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl)-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-tri-
phenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 19, using 3-amino-N-{(1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-
methyl}propanamide and N-α, imidazole-di-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-D-
histidine. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

25 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.75-1.80(19H, m), 1.80-1.98
(1H, m), 2.03-2.22(4H, m), 2.56-2.64(1H, m), 2.66-2.92(3H, m),
3.13-3.32(2H, m), 3.62-3.75(2H, m), 4.25-4.34(1H, m),
6.36-6.52(1H, m), 6.57(1H, s), 6.55-6.70(1H, m), 7.14-7.32
(16H, m), 7.41(1H, s)

30 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₄N₆O₃+H)⁺): 703

Example 21

N-{(1S)-2-(3-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-

3-oxopropyl)amino-1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 19, using 3-amino-N-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-methyl}propanamide and N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-homoserine. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.75-0.90(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 0.92-1.07(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.10-1.98(17\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.03-2.10(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.25-2.34(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.60-2.70(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.02-3.21(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.33-3.44(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.51-3.58(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.67-3.79(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.18-4.27(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 6.16-6.22(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 6.22-6.34(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 6.67-6.75(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.15-7.32(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{54}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 667

Example 22

N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-heptyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}amino-3-oxopropyl)-amino-2-oxoethyl}-N-methyl-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Steps 1-6 of Example 1 and Example 8, using N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-N-methyl-glycine. The compound was obtained as a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.79-2.00(20\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.17-3.81(17\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.80-6.75(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.10-7.35(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{54}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 639

Example 23

N-{2-(3-((1-heptyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}amino-3-oxopropyl)-amino-2-oxoethyl}-N-methyl-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 22, using 3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine. The compound was obtained as a colorless solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.79-2.00(20\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.17-3.81(17\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.80-6.75(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.10-7.35(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₅₄N₄O₃+H)⁺): 639

Example 24

5 N-{6-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl}-3,3,3-
triphenylpropanamide
(Step 1)

Synthesis of methyl 6-((tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino)-
hexanoate

1.28 Grams of 6-((tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino)hexanoic acid
10 was dissolved in a liquid mixture of 9 ml of chloroform and 3 ml of
methanol. To the solution 1.27 g of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylamino-
propyl)carbodiimide monohydrochloride and 7 mg of 4-dimethyl-
aminopyridine were successively added at room temperature, followed
by 2 hours' stirring at the same temperature. The reaction liquid
15 was diluted with chloroform, washed successively with saturated
aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution and saturated aqueous
ammonium chloride solution, and dried over anhydrous sodium
sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 1.03 g of
the title compound was obtained.

20 (Step 2)

Synthesis of N-{6-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-
oxohexyl}-3,3,3- triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting
procedures similar to Steps 2-5 of Example 1 and Step 2 of Example
25 17, using methyl 6-((tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino)hexanoate. The
compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.98-1.82(12H, m), 2.06
(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.31(1H, t, J=11.0Hz), 2.52-2.62(1H, m),
2.87-3.06(4H, m), 3.10(2H, q, J=6.6Hz), 3.55(2H, s),
30 4.87-4.96(1H, m), 5.65-5.72(1H, m), 7.15-7.38(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₃H₄₁N₃O₂+H)⁺): 512

Example 25

N-{6-(((3R)-1-(2-methylbutyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 3 of Example 17, using N-{6-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide and 2-methylbutanal. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.84\text{-}0.91(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 0.95\text{-}1.16(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.36\text{-}2.19(14\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.59\text{-}2.72(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.87\text{-}2.95(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.09\text{-}3.27(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 4.82\text{-}4.90(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.80\text{-}5.92(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.18\text{-}7.32(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 582

Example 26

N-{6-(((3R)-1-(2-methylpentyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 25, using 2-methylpentanal. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.85\text{-}0.95(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 0.97\text{-}1.16(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.18\text{-}2.22(16\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.62\text{-}2.78(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.87\text{-}2.94(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.08\text{-}3.25(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 4.80\text{-}4.88(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.80\text{-}5.92(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.18\text{-}7.37(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 596

Example 27

N-(6-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 25, using acetaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.90\text{-}1.03(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.07(6\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.1\text{Hz}), 1.43\text{-}1.80(7\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.85\text{-}2.96(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.07(2\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.6\text{Hz}), 2.38(2\text{H}, \text{q}, J=7.2\text{Hz}), 2.78\text{-}2.85(2\text{H}, \text{m}),$

2.85-2.96(2H, m), 3.10-3.20(2H, m), 3.56(2H, s), 2.78-4.88
(1H, m), 5.77-5.67(1H, m), 7.17-7.38(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₅H₄₅N₃O₂+H)⁺): 540

5 Example 28

N-(6-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 25, using cyclohexanecarbaldehyde. The compound was
10 obtained as a white foamy substance

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-1.80(23H, m), 1.95-2.08
(5H, m), 2.57-2.65(2H, m), 2.87-2.94(2H, m), 3.13-3.20(2H, m),
3.56(2H, s), 4.78-4.81(1H, m), 5.78-5.80(1H, m),
7.20-7.32(15H, m)

15 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₅₃N₃O₂+H)⁺): 608

Example 29

N-{6-(3-piperidylmethyl)amino-6-oxohexyl}-3,3,3-
triphenylpropanamide

20 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 24, using 3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine.
The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.98-1.82(12H, m), 2.06
(2H, t, J=7.5Hz), 2.31(1H, t, J=11.0Hz), 2.52-2.62(1H, m),
25 2.87-3.06(4H, m), 3.10(2H, q, J=6.6Hz), 3.55(2H, s),
4.87-4.96(1H, m), 5.65-5.72(1H, m), 7.15-7.38(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₃H₄₁N₃O₂+H)⁺): 512

Example 30

30 N-(6-((1-butyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl)-3,3,3-
triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Step 3 of Example 17, using N-{6-(3-piperidylmethyl)amino-6-

oxohexyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide and n-butylaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.88\text{-}1.13(8\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.24\text{-}1.40$
 $(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.43\text{-}1.78(7\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.83\text{-}1.98(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.04\text{-}2.16(3\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $2.38\text{-}2.48(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.85\text{-}2.97(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.08\text{-}3.23(2\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 4.83\text{-}4.92(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.78\text{-}5.88(1\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $7.15\text{-}7.32(15\text{H}, \text{m})$
FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 568

10 Example 31

N-(6-((1-isobutyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl)-
3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 30, using isobutylaldehyde. The compound was obtained as
a colorless oily substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.33(24\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.60\text{-}3.05$
 $(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.05\text{-}3.33(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 4.77\text{-}5.02(1\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $5.80\text{-}6.10(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.10\text{-}7.55(15\text{H}, \text{m})$
FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 568

20 Example 32

N-(6-((1-(2-ethylbutyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl)-
3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 30, using 2-ethylbutanal. The compound was obtained as a
white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.85(6\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.4\text{Hz}), 0.93\text{-}1.19$
 $(5\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.19\text{-}1.78(10\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.78\text{-}2.30(7\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.60\text{-}3.00$
 $(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.03\text{-}3.31(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 4.77\text{-}4.96(1\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $5.82\text{-}6.03(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.10\text{-}7.38(15\text{H}, \text{m})$
FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 596

Example 33

N-(6-((1-cyclohexyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl)-
3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 30, using cyclohexanone. The compound was obtained as a
5 white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.83\text{-}1.38(10\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.40\text{-}1.94$
 $(11\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.00\text{-}2.17(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.20\text{-}2.48(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.50\text{-}3.03$
 $(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.03\text{-}3.28(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 4.79\text{-}4.97(1\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $5.82\text{-}6.03(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.15\text{-}7.40(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

10 FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 594

Example 34

N-(6-((1-benzyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl)-
3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

15 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 30, using benzaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a
colorless oily substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}1.88(11\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.90\text{-}2.45$
 $(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.75\text{-}3.28(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.55(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 3.65\text{-}3.92(2\text{H}, \text{m}),$
20 $4.78\text{-}5.00(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 6.05\text{-}6.30(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.06\text{-}7.60(20\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{47}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 602

Example 35

N-(6-((1-cyclooctylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-
25 oxohexyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 30, using cyclooctanecarbaldehyde. The compound was
obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.98\text{-}2.10(32\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.60\text{-}2.70$
30 $(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.87\text{-}2.93(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.08\text{-}3.28(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $4.79\text{-}4.87(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.82\text{-}5.92(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.18\text{-}7.30(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{42}\text{H}_{57}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 636

Example 36

N-{6-((1-(1-cyclononen-1-ylmethyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-amino-6-oxohexyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 30, using 1-cyclononenecarbaldehyde (WO9804554). The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.95-1.80(22\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.90-1.98(7\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.58-2.70(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.77(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 2.87-2.93(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.12-3.18(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 4.78-4.85(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.36-5.43(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.65-5.75(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.18-7.30(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{43}\text{H}_{57}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 648

Example 37

N-(6-((1-allyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 30, using acrylaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a pale yellow solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.78-2.24(15\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.68-3.27(8\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 4.70-4.93(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.05-5.28(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.50-5.72(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 5.75-5.98(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.10-7.50(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2+\text{H})^+$): 552

Example 38

N-{6-(((3S)-1-(2-methylbutyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-oxohexyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting methods which are similar to Examples 24 and 25, using (3S)-3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.83-0.92(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 0.97-1.16(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.36-1.95(9\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.02-2.21(5\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.60-2.73(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.87-2.95(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.08-3.27(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 4.79-4.88$

(1H, m), 5.78-5.90(1H, m), 7.17-7.33(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as $(C_{38}H_{51}N_3O_2+H)^+$): 582

Example 39

5 (2R)-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)-1-{(2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide
(Step 1)

Synthesis of methyl (2R)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylate monohydrochloride

10 The title compound was prepared by successively conducting methods which are similar to Step 1 of Example 24 and Step 2 of Example 1, using N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-D-proline.
(Step 2)

15 Synthesis of (2R)-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)-1-{(2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

20 The title compound was prepared by successively conducting methods which are similar to Steps 1-5 of Example 1 and Step 2 of Example 17, using methyl (2R)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylate monohydrochloride and N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-proline. The compound was obtained as a colorless oily substance.

25 1H -NMR($CDCl_3$, δ ppm): 0.93-1.52(3H, m), 1.55-2.03 (10H,m), 2.11(1H, t, $J=10.1$ Hz), 2.25-2.33(1H, m), 2.48-2.57 (1H,m), 2.66-2.80(2H, m), 2.88-3.02(3H, m), 3.28-3.42(2H, m), 3.43(1H, d, $J=14.6$ Hz), 3.78-3.86(1H, m), 3.91 (1H, d, $J=14.6$ Hz), 4.10 (1H, t, $J=7.1$ Hz), 4.57(1H, d, $J=8.2$ Hz), 7.15-7.30(16H,m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as $(C_{37}H_{44}N_4O_3+H)^+$): 593

30 Example 40

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-{(2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.78-0.91(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.10-1.30(5\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.32-1.97(16\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.00-2.09(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.25-2.33(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.50-2.83(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.04-3.13(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.27-3.38(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.41(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.6\text{Hz}), 3.77-3.86(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.90(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.6\text{Hz}), 4.06-4.12(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.55-4.62(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.13-7.32(16\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{44}\text{H}_{56}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 689

Example 41

(2R)-N-(3-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide monohydrochloride
(Step 1)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid

The title compound was prepared by conducting procedures similar to Steps 1-4 of Example 1, using methyl (2R)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylate monohydrochloride and N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-proline.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-(3-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide monohydrochloride

The title compound was prepared by conducting procedures similar to Steps 5-6 of Example 1, using (2R)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid and 3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CD₃OD, δppm): 1.10-2.16(15H, m), 2.34-2.53
(1H, m), 2.60-3.16(5H, m), 3.34-3.54(3H, m), 3.70-3.90(2H, m),
4.12-4.19(1H, m), 4.35-4.40(1H, m), 7.10-7.30(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₇H₄₄N₄O₃+H)⁺): 593

5

Example 42

(2R)-N-((1-methyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-
triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
carboxamide

10 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Step 7 of Example 1 using (2R)-N-(3-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-
(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
carboxamide monohydrochloride and 37% aqueous formaldehyde
solution. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

15 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.85-2.05(13H, m), 2.23-2.35
(4H, m), 2.46-2.58(1H, m), 2.65-3.90(3H, m), 2.99-3.17
(1H, m), 3.28-3.47 (3H, m), 3.78-3.90(2H, m), 3.99-4.15
(2H, m), 4.53-4.62(1H, m), 7.13-7.38(16H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₈H₄₆N₄O₃+H)⁺): 607

20

Example 43

(2R)-N-((1-benzyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-
triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
carboxamide

25 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 42, using benzaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a
white solid.

30 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.75-2.00(14H, m), 2.11-2.28
(1H, m), 2.37-2.58(1H, m), 2.60-2.70(1H, m), 2.74-2.90
(2H, m), 3.02-3.29(2H, m), 3.32-3.56(4H, m), 3.56-3.67
(1H, m), 3.82-3.97(1H, m), 4.00-4.13(1H, m), 4.52-4.60
(1H, m), 7.10-7.40(21H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₀N₄O₃+H)⁺): 683

Example 44

(2R)-N-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 42, using cyclohexanecarbaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.75-0.92(4H, m), 1.11-1.22(4H, m), 1.23-2.10(19H, m), 2.24-2.33(1H, m), 2.50-2.86(4H, m), 2.98-3.14(1H, m), 3.26-3.38(2H, m), 3.41(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 3.77-3.85(1H, m), 3.87(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 4.06-4.16(1H, m), 4.57-4.61(1H, m), 7.14-7.35(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₆N₄O₃+H)⁺): 689

Example 45

(2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-tert-butoxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

(Step 1)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-benzyloxycarbonyl-N-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 5 of Example 1, using N-benzyloxycarbonyl-D-proline.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 2.49 g of (2R)-1-benzyloxycarbonyl-N-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide in 20 ml of methanol, 15 mg of 20% palladium hydroxide-carbon catalyst was added, followed by 5 hours' stirring in hydrogen atmosphere. After filtering the catalyst off, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to provide 1.78 g of the title

compound.

(Step 3)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by methods similar to Steps 1 and 2 of Example 45, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and N-benzyloxycarbonyl-O-(tert-butyl)-trans-4-hydroxy-L-proline.

(Step 4)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 2.12 g of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and 1.67 g of 3,3,3-triphenylpropionic acid in 25 ml of chloroform, 944 mg of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate and 1.18 g of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide monohydrochloride were successively added at room temperature, followed by 40 hours' stirring at the same temperature. The reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by means of silica gel column chromatography (eluting solvent: from hexane/ethyl acetate = 2/1 to ethyl acetate) to provide 2.98 g of the title compound.

(Step 5)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-tert-butoxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 2 of Example 17, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-

piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.88-1.05(1H, m), 1.12(9H, s),
1.29-2.00(10H, m), 2.04(1H, t, J=11.3Hz), 2.25-2.38(2H, m),
2.42-2.53(1H, m), 2.78-2.88(2H, m), 2.92-3.05(2H, m),
3.30-3.40(1H, m), 3.50(1H, d, J=14.7Hz), 3.52-3.58(1H, m),
3.76-3.83(1H, m), 3.81(1H, d, J=14.7Hz), 4.27-4.37(2H, m),
4.57(1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.13-7.33(16H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₂N₄O₄+H)⁺): 665

Example 46

(2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

To 1.65 g of (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-tert-butoxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide, 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid was added at room temperature, followed by 1 hour's stirring at the same temperature. The reaction liquid was distilled off under reduced pressure, diluted with chloroform, rendered basic with 4N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, extracted with chloroform and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 1.56 g of the title compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.93-1.08(1H, m), 1.32-1.50
(1H, m), 1.50-2.05(10H, m), 2.09(1H, t, J=11.1Hz),
2.23-2.32(1H, m), 2.51(1H, dt, J=2.3, 9.6Hz), 2.57-2.68
(1H, m), 2.74(1H, d, J=10.9Hz), 2.85-3.02(3H, m), 3.30-3.33
(1H, m), 3.42(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 3.58(1H, dd, J=4.1, 11.0Hz),
3.80-3.87(1H, m), 3.90(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 4.30-4.38(2H, m),
4.56(1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.17-7.32(16H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₇H₄₄N₄O₄+H)⁺): 609

Example 47

(2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-(2-methylbutyl)-3-piperidyl)-methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidyl-methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and 2-methylbutanal. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.15(24\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.23\text{-}2.35(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.57\text{-}2.82(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.03\text{-}3.18(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.30\text{-}3.44(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.55\text{-}3.70(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.80\text{-}4.00(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.29\text{-}4.40(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.54\text{-}4.63(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.18\text{-}7.43(16\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{42}\text{H}_{54}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 679

Example 48

(2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-methyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 47, using 37% aqueous formaldehyde solution. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.72\text{-}0.95(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.23\text{-}1.32(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.43(1\text{H}, \text{t}, J=11.0\text{Hz}), 1.51\text{-}2.08(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.25(3\text{H}, \text{s}), 2.20\text{-}2.34(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.60\text{-}2.86(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.96\text{-}3.10(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.28\text{-}3.37(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.39(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.3\text{Hz}), 3.59(1\text{H}, \text{dd}, J=3.7, 11.1\text{Hz}), 3.80\text{-}3.91(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.98(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.3\text{Hz}), 4.26\text{-}4.38(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.55(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=7.0\text{Hz}), 7.15\text{-}7.40(16\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 623

Example 49

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

5 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 47, using acetaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.88(3H, t, J=6.7Hz), 1.03
(2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.23-1.30(1H, m), 1.38(1H, t, J=11.0Hz),
1.52-2.03(11H, m), 2.25-2.41(2H, m), 2.14-2.92(3H, m),
10 2.99-3.09(1H, m), 3.31-3.36(1H, m), 3.38(1H, d, J=14.3Hz),
3.57-3.62(1H, m), 3.82-3.91(1H, m), 3.97(1H, d, J=14.3Hz),
4.28-4.36(2H, m), 4.56(1H, d, J=6.6Hz), 7.17-7.38(16H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₄₈N₄O₄+H)⁺): 637

15 Example 50

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-butyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
20 Example 47, using n-butylaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.91(6H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.25-2.05
(14H, m), 2.23-2.35(3H, m), 2.63-2.90(4H, m), 3.00-3.10
(1H, m), 3.31-3.36 (1H, m), 3.38(1H, d, J=14.3Hz), 3.59
25 (1H, dd, J=4.2, 11.0Hz), 3.81-3.90(1H, m), 3.95
(1H, d, J=14.3Hz), 4.29-4.38(2H, m), 4.56
(1H, dd, J=1.3, 6.4Hz), 7.17-7.35(16H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₂N₄O₄+H)⁺): 665

30 Example 51

(2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-pentyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 47, using valeraldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.83-2.05(22H, m), 2.22-2.33
5 (3H, m), 2.66-2.81(3H, m), 2.83-2.90(1H, m), 2.99-3.10
(1H, m), 3.30-3.36(1H, m), 3.39(1H, d, J=14.2Hz), 3.60
(1H, dd, J=3.6, 10.9Hz), 3.83-3.89(1H, m), 3.95
(1H, d, J=14.2Hz), 4.28-4.36(2H, m), 4.56
(1H, d, J=6.3Hz), 7.17-7.34(16H, m)
10 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₅₄N₄O₄+H)⁺): 679

Example 52

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-hexyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-
hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-
15 pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 47, using n-hexanal. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-0.93(6H, m), 1.15-2.10
20 (18H, m), 2.20-2.35(3H, m), 2.54-2.65(1H, m), 2.70-2.80
(2H, m), 2.80-2.91(1H, m), 3.02-3.12(1H, m), 3.30-3.40(1H, m),
3.40(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 3.59(1H, dd, J=3.8, 11.1Hz), 3.85
(1H, dt, J=2.6, 10.4Hz), 3.94(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 4.29-4.38
(2H, m), 4.53-4.60(1H, m), 7.17-7.38(16H, m)
25 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₆N₄O₄+H)⁺): 693

Example 53

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cycloheptylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,
4R)-4- hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-
30 pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 47, using cycloheptanecarbaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.75\text{-}0.90(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.02\text{-}2.07$
 $(27\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.25\text{-}2.33(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.49\text{-}2.68(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.70\text{-}2.80$
 $(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.03\text{-}3.14(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.30\text{-}3.40(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.40$
 $(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.5\text{Hz}), 3.60(1\text{H}, \text{dd}, J=3.9, 11.2\text{Hz}), 3.80\text{-}3.87$
 $(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.90(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.5\text{Hz}), 4.29\text{-}4.40(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.57$
 $(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=6.6\text{Hz}), 7.14\text{-}7.37(16\text{H}, \text{m})$
 FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{45}\text{H}_{58}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 719

Example 54

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-
hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide
 (Step 1)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-
 chlorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-
 piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting
 Step 4 of Example 45 and Example 46, using 3,3,3-tris(4-
 chlorophenyl)propionic acid.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,
 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{(3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)-
 carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
 Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris-
 (4-chlorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-
 piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and acetaldehyde. The
 compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}1.78(12\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.90\text{-}2.08$
 $(5\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.26\text{-}2.40(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.52\text{-}2.63(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.73\text{-}2.96$
 $(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.00\text{-}3.11(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.34(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=15.1\text{Hz}), 3.35\text{-}3.42$
 $(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.60\text{-}3.68(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.84(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=15.1\text{Hz}), 3.83\text{-}3.90$
 $(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.35\text{-}4.48(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.56(1\text{H}, \text{dd}, J=1.4, 7.4\text{Hz}),$

7.12-7.30(12H,m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₄₅Cl₃N₄O₄+H)⁺): 739

Example 55

5 (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide
(Step 1)

10 Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Steps 2-4 of Example 17, using (2R)-1-benzyloxycarbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide.

15 (Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

20 The title compound was prepared by successively conducting methods similar to Steps 1-2 of Example 17, Step 3 of Example 1 and Step 4 of Example 17, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-O-benzyl-trans-4-hydroxy-L-proline. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

25 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-2.02(24H, m), 2.05 (2H, d, J=7.0Hz), 2.25-2.35(1H, m), 2.52-2.80(4H, m), 3.04-3.13(1H, m), 3.30-3.38(1H,m), 3.39(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 3.60(1H, dd, J=3.8,11.0Hz), 3.81-3.89(1H, m), 3.91 (1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 4.30-4.38(2H, m), 4.57 (1H, d, J=6.6Hz),
30 7.17-7.33(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₆N₄O₄+H)⁺): 705

Example 56

(2R)-N-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

5 The title compound was prepared by successively conducting a method similar to Example 55, using 3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.73\text{-}2.20(26\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.23\text{-}2.34(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.53\text{-}2.90(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.97\text{-}3.13(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.29\text{-}3.43(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.53\text{-}3.70(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.80\text{-}3.95(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.27\text{-}4.40(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.52\text{-}4.60(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.15\text{-}7.40(16\text{H}, \text{m})$
10 FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{44}\text{H}_{56}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 705

Example 57

(2R)-1-((2S, 4S)-4-amino-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide
15 (Step 1)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-(methanesulfonyloxy)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide
20

To a solution of 30 mg of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide in 0.6 ml of chloroform, 0.018 ml of triethylamine and 0.004 ml of
25 methanesulfonyl chloride were added under cooling with ice, followed by 50 minutes' stirring at room temperature. The reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resultant
30 residue was purified by means of a preparative thin-layer chromatography (KieselgelTM 60F₂₅₄, Art 5744 (Merck), chloroform/methanol/28% aqueous ammonia = 100/10/1) to provide 33 mg of the title compound.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-[(2S, 4S)-4-azido-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonyl-N-[(3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl]pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

5 To a solution of 33 mg of (2R)-N-[(3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl]-1-[(2S, 4R)-4-(methylsulfonyloxy)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide in 1 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, 8.3 mg of sodium azide was added at room temperature, followed by 10 hours' stirring
10 at 85°C under heating. The reaction liquid was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with water and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resultant residue was purified by means of a preparative thin-layer chromatography (Kieselgel™ 60F₂₅₄, Art 5744 (Merck),
15 chloroform/methanol/28% aqueous ammonia = 100/10/1) to provide 25 mg of the title compound.

(Step 3)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-[(2S, 4S)-4-amino-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonyl-N-[(3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl]pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide
20

To a solution of 24 mg of (2R)-1-[(2S, 4S)-4-azido-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonyl-N-[(3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl]pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide in 0.5 ml of 20% hydrous tetrahydrofuran, 13 mg of triphenylphosphine
25 was added at room temperature, followed by 3 hours' refluxing under heating. The reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resultant residue was purified by means of a
30 preparative thin-layer chromatography (Kieselgel™ 60F₂₅₄, Art 5744 (Merck), chloroform/methanol/28% aqueous ammonia = 90/10/1) to provide 16 mg of the title compound in the form of a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.75-0.95(4H, m), 1.10-1.32(4H, m),

1.39(1H, t, J=10.8Hz), 1.40-2.01(15H, m), 2.06
 (2H, d, J=6.9Hz), 2.07-2.18(1H, m), 2.26-2.33(1H, m), 2.54
 (1H, quint, J=6.5Hz), 2.60-2.70(1H, m), 2.70-2.80(1H, m),
 2.89-2.99(1H, m), 3.05-3.17(3H, m), 3.29-3.37(1H, m),
 3.39(1H, d, J=14.3Hz), 3.76-3.82(1H, m), 3.89
 (1H, d, J=14.3Hz), 4.13(1H, t, J=6.6Hz), 4.59
 (1H, dd, J=1.5,8.0Hz), 7.13-7.32(16H, m)
 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₇N₅O₃+H)⁺): 704

10 Example 58

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4S)-4-dimethylamino-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)-carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
 Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-1-((2S, 4S)-4-amino-1-(3,3,3-
 triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexyl-
 methyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and 37%
 aqueous formaldehyde solution. The compound was obtained as a
 white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-0.92(4H, m), 1.10-1.27(4H,m),
 1.34-2.00(16H, m), 2.04(2H, d, J=7.2Hz), 2.08(6H, s),
 2.27-2.35(1H, m), 2.60-2.84(4H, m), 3.05-3.17(2H, m),
 3.27-3.32(1H, m), 3.33(1H, d, J=14.0Hz), 3.78-3.86(1H, m),
 3.90(1H, d, J=14.0Hz), 4.05-4.13(1H, m), 4.59
 (1H, d, J=6.6Hz), 7.16-7.34(16H, m)
 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₆H₆₁N₅O₃+H)⁺): 732

Example 59

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4S)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)-carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
 Steps 3-4 of Example 45, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-

piperidyl)methyl}pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and N-benzyloxy-carbonyl-cis-4-hydroxy-L-proline. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-0.93(5H, m), 1.10-1.33(5H, m),
5 1.43(1H, t, J=10.6Hz), 1.40-2.01(12H, m), 2.06
(2H, d, J=7.2Hz), 2.27-2.35(1H, m), 2.53-2.70(3H, m),
2.71-2.81 (1H, m), 3.07-3.18(1H,m), 3.40(1H, d, J=14.1Hz),
3.40-3.49(2H, m), 3.88-3.95(1H, m), 3.94(1H, d, J=14.1Hz),
4.07-4.16(1H, m), 4.19(1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 4.59(1H, d, J=6.2Hz),
10 5.62(1H, d, J=11.9Hz), 7.10(1H, t, J=5.9Hz), 7.14-7.38
(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₆N₄O₄+H)⁺): 705

Example 60

15 (2R)-1-{(2S, 4R)-4-amino-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-methyl}pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 57 using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-methyl)-1-{(2S, 4S)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound
20 was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.73-2.10(27H, m), 2.25-2.34
(1H, m), 2.47-2.69(3H, m), 2.69-2.80(1H, m), 3.10
25 (1H, quint, J=6.7Hz), 3.29-3.37(1H, m), 3.42
(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 3.59-3.70(2H, m), 3.79-3.85(1H, m),
3.90(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 4.30(1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 4.58
(1H, dd, J=1.6, 7.8Hz), 7.13-7.37(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₇N₅O₃+H)⁺): 704

30

Example 61

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-{(2S, 4R)-4-dimethylamino-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-

carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 58, using (2R)-1-{(2S, 4R)-4-amino-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.75-0.92(4H, m), 1.10-1.30(4H, m), 1.30-1.75(13H, m), 1.75-1.97(2H, m), 2.04(2H, d, J=7.2Hz), 2.12(6H, s), 2.24-2.36(1H, m), 2.37-2.50(1H, m), 2.57-2.69(2H, m), 2.70-2.80(1H, m), 3.02-3.15(2H, m), 3.28-3.38(1H, m), 3.44(1H, d, J=14.7Hz), 3.50-3.60(1H, m), 3.71-3.80(1H, m), 3.88(1H, d, J=14.7Hz), 4.24(1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 4.58(1H, d, J=6.5Hz), 7.05(1H, t, J=5.3Hz), 7.15-7.32(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₆H₆₁N₅O₃+H)⁺): 732

Example 62

N-(7-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-7-oxoheptyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting methods similar to Examples 24 and 28, using 7-((tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino)heptanoic acid. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-1.82(26H, m), 2.10(2H, d, J=7.5Hz), 2.17(2H, d, J=6.9Hz), 2.68-2.80(2H, m), 2.83-2.95(2H, m), 3.08-3.29(2H, m), 3.56(2H, s), 4.74-4.83(1H, m), 5.85-6.00(1H, m), 7.10-7.40(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₅N₃O₂+H)⁺): 622

Example 63

(2R)-N-(1-cyclohexylmethyl-4-piperidyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 5 of Example 1, using 1-cyclohexylmethyl-4-piperidinamine (JP 52122378) and (2R)-1-[(2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid. The compound was
5 obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.70-0.92(3H, m), 1.00-1.20
(3H, m), 1.22-1.39(3H, m), 1.40-1.93(14H, m), 1.95-2.05
(1H, m), 2.07-2.92(2H, m), 2.20-2.29(1H, m), 2.33-2.42(1H, m),
2.80-2.92(2H, m), 3.28-3.35(2H, m), 3.36(1H, d, J=13.7Hz),
10 3.62-3.78(1H, m), 3.85-3.89(1H, m), 3.90(1H, d, J=13.7Hz),
4.09(1H, t, J=6.7Hz), 4.53(1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 6.86
(1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.13-7.38(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₄N₄O₃+H)⁺): 675

15 Example 64

(2R)-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)-1-[(2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was obtained by successively conducting methods similar to Example 63 and Step 2 of Example 17, using
20 4-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine which was synthesized by the method of J. D. Prugh, et al. [*Synth. Commun.*, Vol. 22, 2357-2360 (1992)]. The compound was obtained as a pale yellow oily substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.90-2.05(13H, m), 2.27-2.38
25 (1H, m), 2.48-2.60(2H, m), 2.62-2.84(2H, m), 2.98-3.10(3H, m),
3.28-3.40(2H, m), 3.43(1H, d, J=14.7Hz), 3.75-3.83(1H, m),
3.84(1H, d, J=14.7Hz), 4.09-4.14(1H, m), 4.57-4.62(1H, m),
7.15-7.32(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₇H₄₄N₄O₃+H)⁺): 593

30

Example 65

(2R)-N-[(1-cyclohexylmethyl-4-piperidyl)methyl]-1-[(2S)-1-
(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonylpyrrolidine-2-

carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a colorless oily substance.

¹H-NMR(CD₃OD, δppm): 0.85-1.83(20H, m), 1.85-2.00 (4H, m), 2.01-2.12(2H, m), 2.15-2.22(2H, m), 2.63-2.73 (1H, m), 2.81-3.01(4H, m), 3.37-3.53(2H, m), 3.53 (1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 3.78-3.86(1H, m), 3.90(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 4.22(1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 4.37-4.43(1H, m), 7.13-7.31(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₆N₄O₃+H)⁺): 689

Example 66

(2R)-N-{2-(4-piperidyl)ethyl}-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 64, using 4-aminoethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine which was synthesized by the method of B.C. Askew, et al. [J. Med. Chem., Vol. 40, 1779-1788 (1997)]. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.98-1.12(2H, m), 1.22-1.70 (7H, m), 1.72-2.00(6H, m), 2.25-2.34(1H, m), 5.08 (2H, dt, J=1.8, 12.0Hz), 2.69-2.88(2H, m), 2.97-3.08(2H, m), 3.12-3.42(3H, m), 3.44(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 3.76-4.01(1H, m), 3.86(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 4.14(1H, t, J=6.9Hz), 4.58 (1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.12-7.30(16H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₈H₄₆N₄O₃+H)⁺): 607

Example 67

(2R)-N-{2-(1-cyclohexylmethyl-4-piperidyl)ethyl}-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-N-{2-(4-piperidyl)ethyl}-1-[(2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a colorless oily substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CD}_3\text{OD}, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.83-1.82(22\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.85-2.00(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.01-2.10(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.15-2.21(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.64-2.77(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.86-3.00(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.10-3.22(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.38-3.50(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.54(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=15.3\text{Hz}), 3.76-3.84(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.91(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=15.3\text{Hz}), 1.22(1\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.3\text{Hz}), 4.38-4.42(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.13-7.32(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{45}\text{H}_{58}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 703

Example 68

N-{3-(2-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-2-oxoethyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide
(Step 1)

Synthesis of 2-amino-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)acetamide

The title compound was prepared by conducting procedures similar to Steps 1-2 of Example 17, using (3R)-3-aminomethyl-1-(cyclohexylmethyl)piperidine and (tert-butoxycarbonyl)-glycine.
(Step 2)

Synthesis of N-{3-(2-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-2-oxoethyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Steps 1-2 of Example 17 and Step 4 of Example 45, using 2-amino-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)acetamide and N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)- β -alanine. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.78-2.08(22\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.54-2.64(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.14-3.27(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 3.75(2\text{H}, \text{d}, J=5.3\text{Hz}),$

5.88-5.95(2H, m), 6.39-6.42(1H, m), 7.16-7.31(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₅₀N₄O₃+H)⁺): 623

Example 69

5 (2R,4S)-N-{(1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}-4-
hydroxy-1-{(2S,4R)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

(Step 1)

10 Synthesis of (2R,4S)-N-{(1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-
methyl}-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamide monohydrochloride

The title compound was prepared by conducting a method similar to Steps 5-6 of Example 1, using 3-aminomethyl-1-(cyclohexylmethyl)piperidine and N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-trans-4-hydroxy-D-proline.

15 (Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R,4S)-N-{(1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-methyl}-4-hydroxy-1-{(2S,4R)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

20 The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Steps 1-3 of Example 1, using (2R, 4S)-N-{(1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide monohydrochloride and N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-proline. The product was obtained as a white solid.

25 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.75-0.96(3H, m), 1.08-1.32
(4H, m), 1.38-2.20(19H, m), 2.30-2.43(1H, m), 2.56-2.85
(4H, m), 2.93-3.15(1H, m), 3.25-3.32(1H, m), 3.38-3.43
(2H, m), 3.85-3.93(2H, m), 4.00-4.10(1H, m), 4.38-4.49
(1H, m), 4.65(1H, dd, J=4.4,8.2Hz), 7.13-7.33(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₆N₄O₄+H)⁺): 705

30

Example 70

(2R, 4S)-N-{(1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}-1-{(2S,
4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-4-

hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 2 of Example 55, using (2R, 4S)-N-{(1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxamide monohydrochloride. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 0.70-0.94(3H, m), 1.08-1.32 (4H, m), 1.39-2.13(17H, m), 2.14-2.23(2H, m), 2.42-2.53 (1H, m), 2.57-2.70(1H, m), 2.72-2.88(2H, m), 2.88-3.08(1H, m), 3.31-3.48(2H, m), 3.56-3.62(1H, m), 3.68-3.90(2H, m), 4.27-4.39(3H, m), 4.52-4.60 (1H, m), 7.13-7.30(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{44}\text{H}_{56}\text{N}_4\text{O}_5+\text{H})^+$): 721

Example 71

(2R)-1-{(2S, 4S)-4-acetoxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanol)-pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-{(3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

A solution of 40 mg of (2R)-N-{(3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}-1-{(2S, 4R)-4-(methylsulfonyloxy)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and 30 mg of tetrabutylammonium acetate in 1 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred at 85°C for 15 hours under heating. The reaction liquid was diluted with ethyl acetate, successively washed with water and saturated brine, and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with a preparative thin-layer chromatography (KieselgelTM 60F₂₅₄, Art. 5744 (Merck), chloroform/methanol/28% aqueous ammonia = 100/8/1), to provide 14 mg of the title compound as a colorless oily substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 0.78-2.10(26H, m), 2.20-2.30 (1H, m), 2.32-2.50(2H, m), 2.60-2.68(1H, m), 2.73-3.08(4H, m), 3.30-3.40 (1H, m), 3.40(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 3.56-3.70(1H, m), 3.72-3.80 (1H, m), 4.00(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 4.25-4.33(2H, m),

4.52-4.56(1H, m), 7.13-7.45(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₆H₅₈N₄O₅+H)⁺): 747

Example 72

5 (2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-acetoxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
 pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)
 methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting
procedures similar to Step 1 of Example 57 and Example 71, using
10 (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4S)-4-
 hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-
 pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a yellow
 oily substance.

15 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.70-0.98(4H, m), 1.10-1.38(4H, m),
 1.32(1H, t, J=10.7Hz), 1.39-2.20(15H, m), 2.05
 (3H, s), 2.27-2.38 (2H, m), 2.55-2.65(1H, m), 2.68-2.80
 (1H, m), 2.98-3.18(3H, m), 3.31-3.40(1H, m), 3.44
 (1H, d, J=15.3Hz), 3.74(1H, dd, J=4.6, 11.5Hz), 3.79-3.84
 (1H, m), 3.85(1H, d, J=15.3Hz), 4.35(1H, t, J=8.0Hz), 4.59
20 (1H, d, J=6.6Hz), 5.20-5.27(1H, m), 7.14-7.32(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₆H₅₈N₄O₅+H)⁺): 747

Example 73

25 N-((1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((1-(3,3,3-
 triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
 carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting
procedures similar to Examples 41 and 44, using methyl pyrrolidine-
2-carboxylate monohydrochloride and N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-
30 DL-proline. The compound was obtained as a colorless oily
 substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.60-1.12(3H, m), 1.15-2.20
(24H, m), 2.24-2.38(1H, m), 2.46-2.90(3H, m), 2.98-3.19

(1H, m), 3.20-4.65(8H, m), 7.10-8.20(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₆N₄O₃+H)⁺): 689

Example 74

5 (2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-propyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

10 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 47, using propionaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

15 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-2.06(18H, m), 2.20-2.32 (3H, m), 2.67(1H, d, J=11.4Hz), 2.72-2.82(2H, m), 2.83-2.93 (1H, m), 2.96-3.08(1H, m), 3.30-3.36(1H, m), 3.39 (1H, d, J=14.2Hz), 3.61(1H, dd, J=3.6, 11.2Hz), 3.81-3.90 (1H, m), 3.96(1H, d, J=14.2Hz), 4.28-4.37(2H, m), 4.56 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.17-7.38(16H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₅₀N₄O₄+H)⁺): 651

Example 75

20 (2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-octyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

25 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 47, using n-octanal. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

30 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.83-0.95(6H, m), 1.20-1.83 (18H, m), 1.86-2.02(4H, m), 2.21-2.32(3H, m), 2.64-2.80 (3H, m), 2.83-2.91(1H, m), 3.00-3.10(1H, m), 3.31-3.36 (1H, m), 3.39(1H, d, J=14.4Hz), 3.60(1H, dd, J=3.9, 10.9Hz), 3.81-3.90(1H, m), 3.95(1H, d, J=14.4Hz), 4.28-4.37(2H, m), 4.56(1H, dd, J=1.6, 7.9Hz), 7.16-7.34(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₅H₆₀N₄O₄+H)⁺): 721

Example 76

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclopropylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

5 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 47, using cyclopropanecarbaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.04\text{-}0.10(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 0.45\text{-}0.53(2\text{H}, \text{m}),$
88(4H, t, $J=6.8\text{Hz}$), 1.22-1.38(3H, m), 1.42-1.50(1H, m),
10 1.55-2.05(6H, m), 2.16-2.32(3H, m), 2.62-2.80(2H, m),
2.88-2.98 (1H, m), 2.98-3.09(2H, m), 3.30-3.37(1H, m), 3.39
(1H, d, $J=14.2\text{Hz}$), 3.61(1H, dd, $J=3.8, 11.1\text{Hz}$), 3.82-3.91
(1H, m), 3.97(1H, d, $J=14.2\text{Hz}$), 4.28-4.37(2H, m), 4.53-4.59
(1H, m), 7.17-7.38(16H, m)

15 FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 663

Example 77

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-allyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

20 To a solution of 37 mg of (2R)-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide in 0.9 ml of acetonitrile, 0.0055 ml of allyl bromide and 25 mg of potassium carbonate were added at room temperature,
25 followed by 1.5 hours' stirring at 80°C under heating. The reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform, washed successively with water and 1N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified with a preparative
30 thin-layer chromatography (Kieselgel™ 60F₂₅₄, Art 5744 (Merck), chloroform/methanol/28% aqueous ammonia = 100/10/1), to provide 23 mg of the title compound as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.10(15\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.24\text{-}2.33$

(1H, m), 2.62-2.72(1H, m), 2.73-2.82(1H, m), 2.83-2.92
(1H, m), 2.93-2.9(1H, m), 3.00-3.10(1H, m), 3.30-3.36
(1H, m), 3.39(1H, d, J=14.1Hz), 3.58-3.66(1H, m), 3.80-3.90
(1H, m), 3.95(1H, d, J=14.1Hz), 4.28-4.37(2H, m), 4.52-4.58
5 (1H, m), 5.07-5.19(2H, m), 5.82-5.96(1H, m),
7.17-7.38(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₄₈N₄O₄+H)⁺): 649

Example 78

10 (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-
{(2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(2-methyl-3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting
procedures similar to Step 4 of Example 45, Example 46 and Step 3 of
15 Example 17, using 2-methyl-3,3,3-triphenylpropionic acid. The
compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.70-2.40(31H, m), 2.60-2.90
(2H, m), 2.97-3.10(1H, m), 3.33-3.43(1H, m), 3.76-3.82(1H, m),
3.87-4.00(2H, m), 4.18-4.57(2H, m), 4.60-4.75(2H, m),
20 6.70-6.80(1H, m), 7.10-7.30(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₅H₅₈N₄O₄+H)⁺): 719

Example 79

25 (2R)-1-((2S, 4S)-4-acetylamino-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-
methyl}pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 22 mg of (2R)-1-((2S, 4S)-4-amino-1-
(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-
cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide in 1
30 ml of chloroform, 0.0089 ml of acetic anhydride and 0.0127 ml of
pyridine were added at room temperature, followed by an hour's
stirring at the same temperature. The reaction liquid was diluted
with chloroform, washed successively with saturated aqueous sodium

bicarbonate solution and saturated brine, and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified with a preparative thin-layer chromatography (KieselgelTM 60F₂₅₄, Art 5744 (Merck), chloroform/methanol = 8/1), to provide 18 mg of the title compound as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-0.93(4H, m), 1.12-1.86 (17H, m), 1.93(3H, s), 1.94-2.10(4H, m), 2.25-2.33(1H, m), 2.50-2.70(3H, m), 2.73-2.82(1H, m), 3.10-3.27(2H, m), 3.34-3.45(1H, m), 3.39(1H, d, J=14.2Hz), 3.84-3.93(1H, m), 3.88(1H, d, J=14.2Hz), 4.17(1H, d, J=9.3Hz), 4.42-4.51 (1H, m), 4.53-4.60(1H, m), 7.10-7.33(16H, m), 8.00-8.07 (1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₆H₅₉N₅O₄+H)⁺): 746

Example 80

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4S)-4-(methylsulfonylamino)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 1 of Example 57, using (2R)-1-((2S,4S)-4-amino-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-0.97(3H, m), 1.05-2.10 (23H, m), 2.25-2.34(1H, m), 2.53-2.85(3H, m), 2.89(3H, s), 3.07-3.20(1H, m), 3.32-3.55(3H, m), 3.83-4.00(3H, m), 4.15(1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 4.55-4.61(1H, m), 7.03-7.13(1H, m), 7.15-7.40(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₅H₅₉N₅O₅S+H)⁺): 783

Example 81

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-

{{(2S)-4-oxo-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 0.0037 ml of oxaryl chloride in 0.3 ml of dichloromethane, 0.0065 ml of dimethyl sulfoxide was added at -78°C , followed by 20 minutes' stirring at the same temperature. Then a solution of 25 mg of (2R)-N-{{{(3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl}-methyl}-1-{{(2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide} in 0.9 ml of dichloromethane was added at the same temperature, followed by 30 minutes' stirring, addition of 0.0024 ml of triethylamine at the same temperature, and 20 minutes' stirring at room temperature. The reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform, washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified with a preparative thin-layer chromatography (KieselgelTM 60F₂₅₄, Art5744 (Merck); chloroform/methanol = 9/1), to provide 18 mg of the title compound as a pale pink solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δ ppm): 0.78-2.20(22H, m), 2.21-2.36 (1H, m), 2.47-2.52(2H, m), 2.55-2.90(3H, m), 2.98-3.20(3H, m), 3.27-3.55(2H, m), 3.80-4.03(3H, m), 4.50-4.63(2H, m), 6.88-7.05(1H, m), 7.10-7.40(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₄N₄O₄+H)⁺): 703

Example 82

(2R)-1-{{(2S, 3R, 4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

(Step 1)

Synthesis of (2S)-3,4-dehydro-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Step 1 of Example 24 and Steps 2-4 of Example 1, using N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3,4-dehydro-L-proline.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl-1-((2S)-3,4-dehydro-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

5 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 4 of Example 45, using (2S)-3,4-dehydro-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid and (2R)-N-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide.

10 (Step 3)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl-1-((2S, 3R, 4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

15 To a solution of 29 mg of (2R)-N-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl-1-((2S)-3,4-dehydro-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide in 1.5 ml of 33% hydrous acetonitrile, 6 mg of N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide and then 0.0027 ml of 2% aqueous osmium tetroxide solution were
20 added under cooling with ice, followed by 66 hours' stirring at room temperature. An aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution was added to the reaction liquid, followed by extraction with chloroform and drying over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified with a
25 preparative thin-layer chromatography (KieselgelTM 60F₂₅₄, Art 5744 (Merck), chloroform/methanol = 10/1) to provide 21 mg of the title compound.

(Step 4)

30 Synthesis of (2R)-1-((2S, 3R, 4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidyl)methylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 2 of Example 17, using (2R)-N-((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-

piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 3R, 4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-2.10(12H, m), 2.10-2.25
(2H, m), 2.48-2.60(1H, m), 2.65-2.94(4H, m), 3.45
(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 3.50-3.68(2H, m), 3.77(1H, d, J=14.8Hz),
3.78-3.84(1H, m), 4.10-4.20(3H, m), 4.51-4.56(1H, m),
7.17-7.32(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₇H₄₄N₄O₅+H)⁺): 625

Example 83

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 3R, 4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 77, using (2R)-1-((2S, 3R, 4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and ethyl iodide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.77-2.10(15H, m), 2.20-2.28
(1H, m), 2.30-2.42(2H, m), 2.46-2.60(1H, m), 2.73-2.82(1H, m),
2.84-2.93(2H, m), 2.94-3.04(1H, m), 3.42(1H, d, J=14.5Hz),
3.50-3.64(2H, m), 3.76-3.83(1H, m), 3.85(1H, d, J=14.5Hz),
4.09-4.17(2H, m), 4.18-4.22(1H, m), 9.06
(1H, dd, J=1.4, 8.2Hz), 7.13-7.30(16H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₄₈N₄O₅+H)⁺): 653

Example 84

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S, 3R, 4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-1-((2S,3R,4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-

(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.75-0.98(3H, m), 1.12-1.42(5H, m),
5 1.43-2.04(15H, m), 2.05(2H, d, J=6.5Hz), 2.18-2.27(1H, m),
2.28-2.40(1H, m), 2.57-2.63(1H, m), 2.70-2.80(1H, m),
2.93-3.12(2H, m), 3.44(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 3.51-3.63(2H, m),
3.76-3.80(1H, m), 3.81(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 4.12-4.19(2H, m),
4.20-4.25(1H, m), 4.49-4.54(1H, m), 7.13-7.32(16H, m)
10 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₆N₄O₅+H)⁺): 721

Example 85

(2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-isobutyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide
15

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 47, using isobutylaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a colorless oily substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.75-2.10(22H, m), 2.22-2.32
20 (1H, m), 2.55-2.85(4H, m), 3.01-3.11(1H, m), 3.30-3.43
(2H, m), 3.55-3.68(1H, m), 3.80-4.00(2H, m), 4.27-4.38(2H, m),
4.50-4.59(1H, m), 7.13-7.40(16H, m)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₂N₄O₄+H)⁺): 665

25 Example 86

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-propyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
30 Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and propionaldehyde. The product was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.75-2.10(16H, m), 0.90
(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 2.23-2.42(3H, m), 2.69-2.86(2H, m),
2.87-3.07(3H, m), 3.29-3.40 (2H, m), 3.42
(1H, d, J=14.2Hz), 3.78-3.88(1H, m), 3.98(1H, d, J=14.2Hz),
5 4.02-4.10(1H, m), 4.53-4.59(1H, m), 7.15-7.40(16H, m)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₅₀N₄O₃+H)⁺): 635

Example 87

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-butyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-
10 triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 85, using n-butylaldehyde. The product was obtained as a
white solid.

15 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-2.50(21H, m), 0.92
(3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 2.69-2.83(2H, m), 2.85-3.09(3H, m),
3.29-3.40(2H, m), 3.41 (1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 3.78-3.86(1H, m),
3.99(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 4.02-4.08(1H, m), 4.52-4.60(1H, m),
7.15-7.40(16H, m)
20 ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₂N₄O₃+H)⁺): 649

Example 88

(2R)-N-((1-benzyl-2-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-(3,3,3-
25 triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 63, using 2-aminomethyl-1-benzylpiperidine [cf. Chem.
Pharm. Bull., 43, 1137-1147 (1995)]. The compound was obtained as
a white solid.

30 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.70-2.08(13H, m), 2.27-2.39
(1H, m), 2.42-2.59(1H, m), 2.60-2.85(2H, m), 3.80-3.45(6H, m),
3.50-4.18(5H, m), 4.57-4.62(1H, m), 7.10-7.40(21H, m)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₄H₅₀N₄O₃+H)⁺): 683

Example 89

(2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)-
propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-
5 pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Step 4 of Example 45 and Example 46, using 3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)propionic acid. The product was obtained as a white solid.

10 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.10(13\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.27\text{-}2.35$
(1H, m), 2.48-2.59(2H, m), 2.84-3.06(4H, m), 3.34-3.42(1H, m),
3.36(1H, d, $J=15.0\text{Hz}$), 3.61(1H, dd, $J=3.8, 11.0\text{Hz}$), 3.79
(1H, d, $J=15.0\text{Hz}$), 3.80-3.87(1H, m), 4.37-4.48(2H, m),
4.55(1H, d, $J=6.3\text{Hz}$), 7.03-7.10(1H, m), 7.14(6H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$),
15 7.25(6H, d, $J=8.7\text{Hz}$)

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{41}\text{Cl}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 711

Example 90

(2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)-
20 propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Step 4 of Example 45 and Example 46, using 3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propionic acid. The product was obtained
25 as a pale yellow solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.83\text{-}2.07(12\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.08\text{-}2.18$
(1H, m), 2.25-2.34(1H, m), 2.48-2.60(2H, m), 2.88-3.05(4H, m),
3.32-3.40 (1H, m), 3.41(1H, d, $J=15.1\text{Hz}$), 3.58-3.63(1H, m),
3.77(1H, d, $J=15.1\text{Hz}$), 3.80-3.88(1H, m), 4.37-4.50(2H, m),
30 4.51-4.57(1H, m), 6.96(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=8.6\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.6\text{Hz}$),
7.05-7.20(1H, m), 7.17(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=5.3\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.6\text{Hz}$)

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{41}\text{F}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 663

Example 91

(2R)-1-((2S, 4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-methylphenyl)-propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

5 (Step 1)

Synthesis of methyl 3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)propionate

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 1 of Example 24, using 3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)propionic acid.
(Step 2)

10 Synthesis of methyl 3,3,3-tris(4-vinylphenyl)propionate

The title compound was synthesized referring to Shirakawa, et al.'s method [J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1, 2449-2450 (1997)]. To a solution of 71 mg of nickel (II)-acetylacetonate dihydrate and 289 mg of triphenylphosphine in 2 ml of 1,2-dimethoxyethane, 0.544 ml of
15 1.0 M diisobutylaluminium hydride-toluene solution was added at room temperature in nitrogen atmosphere, and the whole system was added to a solution of 364 mg of methyl 3,3,3-tris (4-chlorophenyl)-propionate and 1.01 g of vinyltributyltin in 5 ml of 1,2-dimethoxyethane at room temperature, followed by 22 hours' stirring at 80°C
20 Further, a system formed by adding 0.544 ml of 1.0 M diisobutylaluminium hydride-toluene solution to a solution of 71 mg of nickel (II)-acetylacetonate dihydrate and 289 mg of triphenylphosphine in 2 ml of 1,2-dimethoxyethane at room temperature in nitrogen atmosphere was added at room temperature, followed by 17 hours'
25 stirring at 80°C under heating. The reaction liquid was cooled to room temperature and 1N potassium fluoride was added, followed by 2 hours' stirring at room temperature. Filtering the reaction liquid through cerite, the filtrate was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed successively with water and saturated brine, and dried over
30 anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by means of silica gel column chromatography (eluting solvent: hexane/ethyl acetate = 300/7 — hexane/ethyl acetate = 300/10) to provide 166 mg of the title

compound.

(Step 3)

Synthesis of 3,3,3-tris(4-vinylphenyl)propionic acid

Fifty-four (54) mg of methyl 3,3,3-tris(4-vinylphenyl)-
5 propionate was suspended in 0.5 ml of dioxane, and to the suspension
0.5 ml of 4N aqueous lithium hydroxide solution was added at room
temperature, followed by 17 hours' stirring at 90°C under heating.
The reaction liquid was made acidic by addition of 1N hydrochloric
acid, extracted with chloroform and dried over anhydrous sodium
10 sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 52.5 mg of
the title compound was obtained.

(Step 4)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-
piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-vinyl-
15 phenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Step 4 of Example 45, using 3,3,3-tris(4-vinylphenyl)propionic acid.

(Step 5)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-
20 piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-
hydroxymethylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-
2-carboxamide

To a solution of 30.6 mg of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxy-
carbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-{3,3,3-
25 tris(4-vinylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
carboxamide and 48 mg of sodium periodate in 3 ml of 50% hydrous
acetonitrile, 0.023 ml of 2% aqueous osmium tetroxide solution was
added at room temperature in nitrogen atmosphere, followed by 20
hours' stirring at the same temperature. To the reaction liquid 41
30 mg of sodium borohydride was added under cooling with ice, followed

by 4 hours' stirring at room temperature. To the reaction liquid an aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution was added, followed by filtration with cerite, extraction with chloroform, and drying over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by preparative thin layer chromatography [Kieselgel™ 60F₂₅₄, Art 5744 (Merck); chloroform / methanol = 10/1], to provide 8.4 mg of the title compound.

(Step 6)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-methylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Example 79, Step 2 of Example 45 and Example 46, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-hydroxymethylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The product was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.82-2.29(14H, m), 2.30(9H, s), 2.50-2.67(2H, m), 2.92(2H, t, J=6.2Hz), 2.98-3.10(2H, m), 3.32-3.41(1H, m), 3.33(1H, d, J=14.1Hz), 3.58-3.68(1H, m), 3.86(1H, d, J=14.1Hz), 3.87-3.91(1H, m), 4.25-4.36(2H, m), 4.50-4.58(1H, m), 7.06(6H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.18(6H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.37-7.46(1H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₅₀N₄O₄+H)⁺): 651

Example 92

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

(Step 1)

Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 15.6 mg of (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-vinylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide in 0.6 ml of methanol, 5 mg of 10% palladium-carbon catalyst was added at room temperature, followed by 4.5 hours' stirring in hydrogen atmosphere. After filtering the catalyst off, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to provide 12 mg of the title compound.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 46, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.97\text{-}2.10(12\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.22(9\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.6\text{Hz}), 2.12\text{-}2.35(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.48\text{-}2.60(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.62(6\text{H}, \text{q}, J=7.6\text{Hz}), 2.78\text{-}3.03(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.30\text{-}3.40(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.34(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.0\text{Hz}), 3.58\text{-}3.65(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.80\text{-}3.86(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.87(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.0\text{Hz}), 4.27\text{-}4.38(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.52\text{-}4.59(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.08(6\text{H}, \text{d}, J=8.3\text{Hz}), 7.20(6\text{H}, \text{d}, J=8.3\text{Hz}), 7.27\text{-}7.40(1\text{H}, \text{m})$
ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{43}\text{H}_{56}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 693

Example 93

(2R)-N-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)-carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
5 Example 77, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3S)-3-piperidyl)-methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and ethyl iodide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-1.15(6H, m), 1.22
10 (9H, t, J=7.6Hz), 1.28-2.10(11H, m), 2.24-2.32(1H, m),
2.32-2.48(2H, m), 2.61(6H, q, J=7.6Hz), 2.75-3.04
(4H, m), 3.29-3.40(2H, m), 3.60-3.68(1H, m), 3.83-4.01
(2H, m), 4.20-4.33(2H, m), 4.50-4.59(1H, m), 7.08
(6H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.23(6H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.30-7.42(1H, m)
15 ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₅H₆₀N₄O₄+H)⁺): 721

Example 94

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3R)-3-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-
20 carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Steps 1-4 of Example 45 and Example 46, using (3S)-3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.88-2.08(12H, m), 2.21
25 (1H, t, J=11.0Hz), 2.27-2.36(1H, m), 2.46-2.58(2H, m),
2.78-2.99(3H, m), 3.00-3.12(1H, m), 3.30-3.40(1H, m), 3.44
(1H, d, J=14.7Hz), 3.62(1H, dd, J=4.0, 10.9Hz), 3.78-3.85
(1H, m), 3.86(1H, d, J=14.7Hz), 4.30-4.40(2H, m),
30 4.55-4.62(1H, m), 7.15-7.38(16H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₇H₄₄N₄O₄+H)⁺): 609

Example 95

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
5 pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(((3S)-1-methyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-
triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-((3R)-3-piperidyl-
10 methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and 37% aqueous formaldehyde
solution. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.68-2.10(13H, m), 2.24(3H, s),
2.25-2.33(1H, m), 2.46-2.55(1H, m), 2.57-2.68(1H, m),
2.73-2.86(2H, m), 3.03-3.14(1H, m), 3.29-3.40(1H, m),
15 3.42(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 3.61(1H, dd, J=4.0, 10.7Hz),
3.79-3.86(1H, m), 3.87(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 4.32-4.40(2H, m),
4.54-4.60(1H, m), 7.15-7.35(16H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₈H₄₆N₄O₄+H)⁺): 623

20 Example 96

(2R)-N-(((3S)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-
hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-
carbonylpyrrolidin-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
25 Example 95, using acetaldehyde. The product was obtained as a
white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-2.32(14H, m), 1.06
(3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 2.33-2.47(3H, m), 2.71-2.79(1H, m),
2.82-2.92(2H, m), 3.00-3.12(1H, m), 3.29-3.38(1H, m),
30 3.44(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 3.59(1H, dd, J=4.0, 10.9Hz),

3.79-3.85(1H, m), 3.86(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 4.32-4.40(2H, m),
4.55(1H, d, J=6.6Hz), 7.13-7.32(16H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₄₈N₄O₄+H)⁺): 637

5 Example 97

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3S)-1-propyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
10 Example 95, using propionaldehyde. The product was obtained as a
white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.69-2.08(15H, m), 0.87
(3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.08-2.38(3H, m), 2.49-2.60(1H, m),
2.72-2.93(3H, m), 3.00-3.13(1H, m), 3.29-3.40(1H, m), 3.41
15 (1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 3.60(1H, dd, J=3.8, 11.0Hz), 3.80-3.87
(1H, m), 3.87(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 4.30-4.44(2H, m), 4.55-4.62
(1H, m), 7.15-7.43(16H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₅₀N₄O₄+H)⁺): 651

20 Example 98

(2R)-N-(((3S)-1-cyclopropylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,
4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
25 Example 95, using cyclopropanecarbaldehyde. The product was
obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.05-0.18(2H, m), 0.43-0.55(2H, m),
0.70-2.07(14H, m), 2.18-2.34(3H, m), 2.42-2.55(1H, m),
2.78-2.94(2H, m), 2.97-3.15(2H, m), 3.30-3.41(1H, m),
30 3.43(1H, d, J=14.9Hz), 3.60(1H, dd, J=4.0, 11.1Hz),

3.78-3.86(1H, m), 3.89(1H, d, J=14.9Hz), 4.30-4.40(2H, m),
4.57(1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.12-7.30(16H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₀N₄O₄+H)⁺): 663

5 Example 99

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)-
propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

(Step 1)

10 Synthesis of (2R)-N-(((3S)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-
piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)pyrrolidin-2-yl)-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Steps 1-3 of Example 45, using (3S)-3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-
15 butoxycarbonyl)piperidine.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-
chlorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-3-
piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

20 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 88, using (2R)-N-(((3S)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-
piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)pyrrolidin-2-yl)-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The product was obtained as a
white foamy substance.

25 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.83-1.82(8H, m), 1.88-2.10(4H, m),
2.13-2.22(1H, m), 2.28-2.40(2H, m), 2.48-2.59(1H, m),
2.80-2.88(1H, m), 2.90-3.07(2H, m), 3.08-3.20(1H, m),
3.29-3.39(1H, m), 3.39(1H, d, J=15.3Hz), 3.60-3.66(1H, m),
3.73(1H, d, J=15.3Hz), 3.77-3.86(1H, m), 4.39-4.52(2H, m),

4.57(1H, d, J=5.6Hz), 7.02-7.20(1H, m), 7.12(6H, d, J=8.9Hz),
7.24(6H, d, J=8.9Hz)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₇H₄₁Cl₃N₄O₄+H)⁺): 711

5 Example 100

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)-
propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
10 Step 2 of Example 99, using 3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propionic acid.
The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.85-2.10(12H, m), 2.12-2.23
(1H, m), 2.25-2.40(2H, m), 2.47-2.58(1H, m), 2.80-2.90(1H, m),
2.91-3.00(1H, m), 3.04-3.18(2H, m), 3.30-3.42(1H, m),
15 3.45(1H, d, J=15.4Hz), 3.62(1H, dd, J=4.3, 10.9Hz), 3.72
(1H, d, J=15.4Hz), 3.77-3.85(1H, m), 4.40-4.50(2H, m),
4.52-4.60(1H, m), 6.96(6H, dd, J_{HF}=8.9Hz, J_{HH}=8.9Hz),
7.09-7.20(1H, m), 7.15(6H, dd, J_{HF}=5.3Hz, J_{HH}=8.9Hz)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₇H₄₁F₃N₄O₄+H)⁺): 663

20

Example 101

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-
carboxamide

25 (Step 1)

Synthesis of methyl (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-
pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxylate

The title compound was prepared by procedures similar to
Steps 1-2 of Example 45, using methyl (2R)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylate

and N- α -benzyloxycarbonyl-O-(tert-butyl)-trans-4-hydroxy-L-proline.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-[(2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid

The title compound was obtained by successively conducting procedures which were similar to Step 4 of Example 45 and Step 4 of Example 1, using methyl (2R)-1-[(2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxylate.

(Step 3)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-[(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures which were similar to Step 5 of Example 1 and Example 46, using (2R)-1-[(2S,4R)-4-(tert-butoxy)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid and 4-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine. The compound was obtained as a colorless oily substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 1.18-1.72(6H, m), 1.75-2.09(5H, m), 2.19-2.30(1H, m), 2.57-2.76(3H, m), 2.86(1H, d, $J=10.6\text{Hz}$), 3.00-3.12(1H, m), 3.18-3.40(3H, m), 3.52(1H, d, $J=14.8\text{Hz}$), 3.57(1H, dd, $J=4.0, 11.0\text{Hz}$), 3.78(1H, d, $J=14.8\text{Hz}$), 3.79-3.86(2H, m), 4.30-4.40(2H, m), 4.50-4.59(1H, m), 7.13-7.32(15H, m), 7.33-7.41(1H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 609

Example 102

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-

2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by procedures similar to Steps 2-3 of Example 101, using 3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)propionic acid. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

5 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.83\text{-}2.08(12\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.29\text{-}2.45$
(2H, m), 2.46-2.58(2H, m), 2.98-3.16(4H, m), 3.30-3.38(1H, m),
3.39(1H, d, $J=15.0\text{Hz}$), 3.63(1H, dd, $J=4.1, 10.8\text{Hz}$), 3.71
(1H, d, $J=15.0\text{Hz}$), 3.76-3.86(1H, m), 4.38-4.51(2H, m),
4.58(1H, d, $J=5.9\text{Hz}$), 7.05-7.20(1H, m), 7.12(6H, d, $J=8.8\text{Hz}$),
10 7.24(6H, d, $J=8.8\text{Hz}$)

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{41}\text{Cl}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 711

Example 103

(2R)-1-(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)-
15 propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-
2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by procedures similar to Steps 2-3 of Example 101, using 3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propionic acid. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

20 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.08(12\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.28\text{-}2.45$
(2H, m), 2.46-2.57(2H, m), 2.98-3.12(4H, m), 3.32-3.40(1H, m),
3.44(1H, d, $J=15.1\text{Hz}$), 3.59(1H, dd, $J=4.1, 10.8\text{Hz}$), 3.69
(1H, d, $J=15.1\text{Hz}$), 3.77-3.87(1H, m), 4.40-4.51(2H, m),
4.53-4.61(1H, m), 6.96(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=8.8\text{Hz}, J_{\text{HH}}=8.8\text{Hz}$),
25 7.08-7.20(1H, m), 7.15(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=5.2\text{Hz}, J_{\text{HH}}=8.8\text{Hz}$)

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{41}\text{F}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 663

Example 104

(2R)-1-(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
30 pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylethyl)pyrrolidine-2-

carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Step 3 of Example 101 using 4-aminoethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-piperidine. The compound was obtained as a pale yellow oily substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 1.02\text{-}2.40(15\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.52\text{-}2.64(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.65\text{-}2.78(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.85(1\text{H}, \text{d}, \text{H}=10.8\text{Hz}), 3.02\text{-}3.11(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.12\text{-}3.24(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.29\text{-}3.40(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.45(1\text{H}, \text{d}, \text{J}=14.6\text{Hz}), 3.58(1\text{H}, \text{dd}, \text{J}=4.0, 10.9\text{Hz}), 3.78\text{-}3.82(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.83(1\text{H}, \text{d}, \text{J}=14.6\text{Hz}), 4.32\text{-}4.40(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.52\text{-}4.59(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.12\text{-}7.31(16\text{H}, \text{m})$

ESI-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 623

Example 105

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(1-methyl-4-piperidylethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was obtained by a method similar to Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidine-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and 37% aqueous formaldehyde solution. The compound was obtained as a colorless oily substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 1.05\text{-}2.08(15\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.28(3\text{H}, \text{s}), 2.29\text{-}2.36(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.70\text{-}2.92(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.12\text{-}3.28(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.30\text{-}3.42(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.43(1\text{H}, \text{d}, \text{J}=14.5\text{Hz}), 3.59(1\text{H}, \text{dd}, \text{J}=3.8, 10.9\text{Hz}), 3.78\text{-}3.83(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.84(1\text{H}, \text{d}, \text{J}=14.5\text{Hz}), 4.32\text{-}4.41(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.53\text{-}4.60(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.13\text{-}7.33(16\text{H}, \text{m})$

ESI-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{48}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 637

Example 106

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)-propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

5 The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Step 2 of Example 101 and Example 104, using 3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)propionic acid. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.95-1.88(10H, m), 1.90-2.00
10 (2H, m), 2.01-2.12(2H, m), 2.28-2.38(1H, m), 2.46-2.60(3H, m),
2.98-3.11(3H, m), 3.20-3.38(2H, m), 3.40(1H, d, J=15.4Hz),
3.63(1H, dd, J=4.1, 11.0Hz), 3.71(1H, d, J=15.4Hz),
3.73-3.82(1H, m), 4.39-4.52(2H, m), 4.53-4.60(1H, m),
6.98-7.05(1H, m), 7.10(6H, d, J=8.8Hz), 7.23(6H, d, J=8.8Hz)

15 ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₈H₄₃Cl₃N₄O₄+H)⁺): 725

Example 107

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)-propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

20 The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Step 2 of Example 101 and Example 104, using 3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propionic acid. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

25 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.85-1.86(10H, m), 1.88-2.00
(2H, m), 2.00-2.10(2H, m), 2.27-2.36(1H, m), 2.47-2.60(3H, m),
2.98-3.06(2H, m), 3.07-3.14(1H, m), 3.15-3.28(1H, m),
3.30-3.41(1H, m), 3.45(1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 3.60
(1H, dd, J=4.2, 10.6Hz), 3.70(1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 3.75-3.85
30 (1H, m), 4.41-4.52(2H, m), 4.53-4.60(1H, m), 6.94

(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=8.5\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.5\text{Hz}$), 7.00-7.10(1H, m), 7.13

(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=5.3\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.5\text{Hz}$)

ESI-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{43}\text{F}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 677

5 Example 108

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)-
propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(1-methyl-4-piperidylmethyl)-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
10 Example 105, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluoro-
phenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white
solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 1.12-2.20(13H, m), 2.31(3H, s),
15 2.32-2.39(1H, m), 2.48-2.58(1H, m), 2.83-2.94(2H, m),
2.99-3.10(2H, m), 3.35-3.42(1H, m), 3.45(1H, d, $J=15.0\text{Hz}$),
3.62(1H, dd, $J=4.1, 11.0\text{Hz}$), 3.73(1H, d, $J=15.0\text{Hz}$),
3.78-3.88(1H, m), 4.40-4.53(2H, m), 4.59(1H, d, $J=5.9\text{Hz}$),
6.92-7.03(6H, m), 7.08-7.25(7H, m)

20 ESI-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{43}\text{F}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 677

Example 109

(2R)-N-((1-ethyl-4-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-
{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-
25 pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Exampel 93, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-
fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidyl-
methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a

30

white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 1.03-2.15(16H, m), 2.29-2.48
(3H, m), 2.50-2.60(1H, m), 2.86-2.96(2H, m), 2.97-3.10(2H, m),
5 3.30-3.40(1H, m), 3.42(1H, d, J=15.1Hz), 3.63
(1H, dd, J=3.9, 11.0Hz), 3.72(1H, d, J=15.1Hz), 3.78-3.88
(1H, m), 4.40-4.52(2H, m), 4.53-4.61(1H, m), 6.96
(6H, dd, J_{HF}=8.8Hz, J_{HH}=8.8Hz), 7.07-7.20(1H, m),
7.16(6H, dd, J_{HF}=5.3Hz, J_{HH}=8.8Hz)
10 ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₄₅F₃N₄O₄+H)⁺): 691

Example 110

(2R)-1-(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)-
propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-{1-(2-propyl)-4-piperidyl-
15 methyl}pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 109, using 2-propyl bromide. The compound was obtained
as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.82-2.17(13H, m), 1.06
20 (6H, d, J=6.2Hz), 2.28-2.37(1H, m), 2.48-2.59(1H, m),
2.66-2.93(3H, m), 2.96-3.10(2H, m), 3.32-3.41(1H, m),
3.43(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 3.63(1H, dd, J=4.3, 10.8Hz), 3.73
(1H, d, J=15.0Hz), 3.78-3.88(1H, m), 4.38-4.51(2H, m),
4.57(1H, d, J=6.7Hz), 6.96(6H, dd, J_{HF}=8.8Hz, J_{HH}=8.8Hz),
25 7.08-7.20(1H, m), 7.16(6H, dd, J_{HF}=5.4Hz, J_{HH}=8.8Hz)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₄₇F₃N₄O₄+H)⁺): 705

Example 111

(2R)-N-((1-cyclobutylmethyl-4-piperidyl)methyl)-1-(((2S,4R)-
30 4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)-

carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 109, using (bromomethyl)cyclobutane. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

5 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.82\text{-}2.10(20\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.28\text{-}2.44$
(2H, m), 2.45-2.60(2H, m), 2.76-2.92(2H, m), 2.97-3.08(2H, m),
3.30-3.40(1H, m), 3.41(1H, d, $J=15.1\text{Hz}$), 3.57-3.67(1H, m),
3.72(1H, d, $J=15.1\text{Hz}$), 3.78-3.87(1H, m), 4.39-4.52(2H, m),
4.54-3.61(1H, m), 6.96(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=8.8\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.8\text{Hz}$),
10 7.06-7.20(1H, m), 7.15(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=5.3\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.8\text{Hz}$)
ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{42}\text{H}_{49}\text{F}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 731

Example 112

(2R)-N-((1-cyclopentylmethyl-4-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-
15 4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 19 mg of (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidyl-methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide in 1.5 ml of acetonitrile, 14 mg of
20 methanesulfonic acid-cyclopentylmethyl, 13 mg of potassium carbonate and 5 mg of potassium iodide were added at room temperature, followed by 24 hours' stirring at 80°C under heating. The reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform, washed successively with water and 1N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, and dried
25 over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, the resultant residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography [Kieselgel™ 60F₂₅₄, Art 5744 (Merck), chloroform/methanol/28% aqueous ammonia = 100/10/1) to provide 16 mg of the title compound as a white solid.

30 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 1.07\text{-}2.50(26\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.82\text{-}2.98$

(2H, m), 3.00-3.12(2H, m), 3.32-3.40(1H, m), 3.44
(1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 3.62(1H, dd, J=4.3, 10.8Hz), 3.72
(1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 3.78-3.88(1H, m), 4.40-4.52(2H, m),
4.53-4.61(1H, m), 6.96(6H, dd, J_{HF} =8.8Hz, J_{HH} =8.8Hz),
7.07-7.22(1H, m), 7.15(6H, dd, J_{HF} =5.2Hz, J_{HH} =8.8Hz)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₁F₃N₄O₄+H)⁺): 745

Example 113

(2R)-N-{(1-cyclopentyl-4-piperidyl)methyl}-1-((2S,4R)-4-
hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 109, using bromocyclopentyl. The compound was obtained
as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 1.08-2.20(21H, m), 2.29-2.65
(3H, m), 3.02-3.18(4H, m), 3.30-3.92(3H, m), 3.42
(1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 3.71(1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 4.39-4.67(3H, m),
6.90-7.27(13H, m)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₄₉F₃N₄O₄+H)⁺): 731

Example 114

(2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(1-methyl-4-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-
2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 105, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-
2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 1.16-2.08(13H, m), 2.27(3H, s),
2.28-2.36(1H, m), 2.70-2.79(2H, m), 2.80-2.91(2H, m),

2.93-3.04(1H, m), 3.30-3.40(1H, m), 3.43(1H, d, J=14.6Hz),
3.60(1H, dd, J=3.8, 11.0Hz), 3.85(1H, d, J=14.6Hz),
3.86-4.01(1H, m), 4.32-4.40(2H, m), 4.58(1H, d, J=6.7Hz),
7.17-7.36(16H, m)

5 ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₈H₄₆N₄O₄+H)⁺): 623

Example 115

(2R)-N-((3S)-1-(1-cyclobutylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-
((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)-
10 carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 111, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-((3R)-3-piperidylmethyl)-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white
15 solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.65-2.08(19H, m), 2.25-2.33
(1H, m), 2.35(2H, d, J=6.9Hz), 2.43-2.58(2H, m), 2.60-2.70
(1H, m), 2.71-2.82(2H, m), 3.00-3.11(1H, m), 3.29-3.39(1H, m),
3.40(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 3.59(1H, dd, J=3.8, 11.0Hz),
20 3.80-3.90(1H, m), 3.87(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 4.30-4.38(2H, m),
4.52-4.59(1H, m), 7.14-7.36(16H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₅₂N₄O₄+H)⁺): 677

Example 116

25 (2R)-N-((3S)-1-(2,2-dimethylcyclopentylmethyl)-3-piperidyl)-
methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 95, using 2,2-dimethylcyclopentanecarbaldehyde which was
30 synthesized following K.D. Hutchinson, et al. [*Tetrahedron*, Vol. 50,

6129-6136 (1994)]. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.74(3\text{H}, \text{s}), 0.80\text{-}2.02(20\text{H}, \text{m}),$
1.01(3H, s), 2.07-2.20(1H, m), 2.21-2.36(2H, m), 2.50-2.92
(4H, m), 3.00-3.14(1H, m), 3.30-3.40(1H, m), 3.42
(1H, d, $J=14.4\text{Hz}$), 3.61(1H, dd, $J=2.4, 11.1\text{Hz}$), 3.81-3.90
(1H, m), 3.88(1H, d, $J=14.4\text{Hz}$), 4.30-4.40(2H, m),
4.55-4.61(1H, m), 7.15-7.38(16H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{45}\text{H}_{58}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 719

10 Example 117

(2R)-N-(((3S)-1-{2-(1-methylcyclopropyl)ethyl}-3-piperidyl)-
methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-
2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to

15 Examples 95, using 3-cyclopropanebutanal. The compound was
obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.18\text{-}0.30(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 0.70\text{-}2.07$
(15H, m), 1.01(3H, s), 2.24-2.34(1H, m), 2.35-2.57(3H, m),
2.68-2.92(3H, m), 3.01-3.13(1H, m), 3.29-3.40(1H, m),
3.41(1H, d, $J=14.5\text{Hz}$), 3.60(1H, dd, $J=3.8, 11.0\text{Hz}$),
3.79-3.87(1H, m), 3.88(1H, d, $J=14.5\text{Hz}$), 4.30-4.39(2H, m),
4.56-4.61(1H, m), 7.15-7.38(16H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{43}\text{H}_{54}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 691

25 Example 118

(2R)-N-(((3S)-1-(1-cyclopentylethyl)-3-piperidyl)-
methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-
2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to

30 Example 112, using 1-(cyclopentyl)ethyl 4-methylbenzenesulfonate.

The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.08(24\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.15\text{-}2.40$
 $(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.50\text{-}3.15(5\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.30\text{-}3.53(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.56\text{-}3.72$
 $(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.78\text{-}3.93(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.26\text{-}4.42(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.53\text{-}4.62$
 $(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.15\text{-}7.43(16\text{H}, \text{m})$

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{44}\text{H}_{56}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 705

Example 119

(2R)-N-(((3S)-1-(1-cyclohexylethyl)-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-
{{(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Step 3 of Example 17, using (2R)-1-{{(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-
triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-((3R)-3-piperidyl-
methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and cyclohexyl methyl ketone.
The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.08(27\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.22\text{-}3.15$
 $(7\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.32\text{-}3.46(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.58\text{-}3.77(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.84\text{-}3.93$
 $(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.28\text{-}4.40(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.52\text{-}4.60(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.18\text{-}7.40$
 $(16\text{H}, \text{m})$

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{45}\text{H}_{58}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 719

Example 120

(2R)-N-(((3S)-1-cyclohexyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-
{{(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 119, using cyclopentanone. The compound was obtained as
a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.70-2.08(21H, m), 2.26-2.35
(1H, m), 2.39-2.53(2H, m), 2.79-3.03(3H, m), 3.04-3.18
(1H, m), 3.30-3.40(1H, m), 3.42(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 3.58
(1H, dd, J=4.0, 10.9Hz), 3.79-3.90(1H, m), 3.89
5 (1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 4.30-4.40(2H, m), 4.54-4.60(1H, m),
7.16-7.38(16H, m)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₅₂N₄O₄+H)⁺): 677

Example 121

10 (2R)-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-
fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 64, using 3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propionic acid. The
15 compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.88-1.10(2H, m), 1.44-1.70
(4H, m), 1.75-2.09(7H, m), 2.30-2.40(1H, m), 2.48-2.60
(3H, m), 2.92-3.13(4H, m), 3.31-3.48(2H, m), 3.42
(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 3.76(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 3.78-3.84
20 (1H, m), 4.21(1H, t, J=6.9Hz), 4.59-4.64(1H, m), 6.97
(6H, dd, J_{HF}=8.8Hz, J_{HH}=8.8Hz), 7.08-7.26(1H, m), 7.18
(6H, dd, J_{HF}=5.2Hz, J_{HH}=8.8Hz)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₇H₄₁F₃N₄O₃+H)⁺): 647

25 Example 122

(2R)-N-((1-methyl-4-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-{3,3,3-
tris(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
30 Example 95, using (2R)-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-{3,3,3-tris-

(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 1.12-1.33(3H, m), 1.35-1.50
(1H, m), 1.52-1.70(3H, m), 1.77-2.08(7H, m), 2.29(3H, s),
2.30-2.39(1H, m), 2.60-2.71(1H, m), 2.80-2.90(2H, m),
2.91-3.10(2H, m), 3.31-3.50(2H, m), 3.41(1H, d, $J=14.9\text{Hz}$),
3.77(1H, d, $J=14.9\text{Hz}$), 3.78-3.85(1H, m), 4.20(1H, t, $J=6.9\text{Hz}$),
4.58-4.63(1H, m), 6.97(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=8.9\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.9\text{Hz}$),
7.08-7.23(1H, m), 7.19(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=5.2\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.9\text{Hz}$)

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{43}\text{F}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 661

Example 123

(2R)-N-((1-ethyl-4-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-{3,3,3-tris-
(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-
carboamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 93, using (2R)-N-(4-piperidylmethyl)-1-((2S)-1-{3,3,3-tris-(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 1.09(3H, t, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 1.15-1.33
(3H, m), 1.34-1.50(1H, m), 1.52-1.68(3H, m), 1.74-2.08
(7H, m), 2.29-2.35(1H, m), 2.40(2H, q, $J=7.1\text{Hz}$), 2.60-2.70
(1H, m), 2.87-2.98(3H, m), 2.99-3.10(1H, m), 3.30-3.50(2H, m),
3.39(1H, d, $J=14.8\text{Hz}$), 3.76(1H, d, $J=14.8\text{Hz}$), 3.77-3.83
(1H, m), 4.19(1H, t, $J=6.9\text{Hz}$), 4.58-4.62(1H, m), 6.95
(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=8.8\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.8\text{Hz}$), 7.06-7.12(1H, m), 7.17
(6H, dd, $J_{\text{HF}}=5.3\text{Hz}$, $J_{\text{HH}}=8.8\text{Hz}$)

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{45}\text{F}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_3+\text{H})^+$): 675

Example 124

(2R)-N-((1-propyl-4-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-{3,3,3-tris-(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 122, using propionaldehyde. The product was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.90(3H, t, J=7.3Hz),
1.03-2.10(16H, m), 2.22-2.38(3H, m), 2.59-2.70(1H, m),
2.85-2.99(3H, m), 3.00-3.10(1H, m), 3.30-3.50(2H, m),
3.40(1H, d, J=14.9Hz), 3.77(1H, d, J=14.9Hz), 3.78-3.84
(1H, m), 4.20(1H, t, J=6.9Hz), 4.57-4.62(1H, m), 6.95
(6H, dd, J_{HF}=8.9Hz, J_{HH}=8.9Hz), 7.06-7.15(1H, m), 7.18
(6H, dd, J_{HF}=5.2Hz, J_{HH}=8.9Hz)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₄₇F₃N₄O₃+H)⁺): 689

Example 125

(2R)-N-((1-cyclopropylmethyl-4-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S)-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-fluorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 122, using cyclopropanecarbaldehyde. The product was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.08-0.14(2H, m), 0.48-0.56
(2H, m), 0.83-2.10(15H, m), 2.20-2.28(2H, m), 2.30-2.39
(1H, m), 2.62-2.72(1H, m), 2.89-2.97(1H, m), 2.99-3.11(3H, m),
3.30-3.50(2H, m), 3.41(1H, d, J=14.9Hz), 3.77(1H, d,
J=14.9Hz), 3.78-3.86(1H, m), 4.20(1H, t, J=6.9Hz),
4.58-4.63(1H, m), 6.96(6H, dd, J_{HF}=8.8Hz, J_{HH}=8.8Hz),
7.03-7.12(1H, m), 7.18(6H, dd, J_{HF}=5.3Hz, J_{HH}=8.8Hz)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₄₇F₃N₄O₃+H)⁺): 701

Example 126

N-{3-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinecarboxamide

The title compound was obtained by successively conducting procedures similar to Steps 1-5 of Example 1 and Step 2 of Example 17, using tert-butoxycarbonyl-L-proline. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.95-1.98(11H, m), 2.06-2.12 (1H, m), 2.18-2.28(2H, m), 2.44-2.56(1H, m), 2.83-3.10 (4H, m), 3.18-3.32(1H, m), 3.33-3.54(2H, m), 3.63 (1H, d, J=15.3Hz), 3.77(1H, d, J=15.3Hz), 4.12-4.20(1H, m), 6.32-6.41(1H, m), 6.63-6.71(1H, m), 7.12-7.30(15H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₅H₄₂N₄O₃+H)⁺): 567

Example 127

N-{3-(((3R)-1-(cyclohexylmethyl)-3-piperidyl)methylamino)-3-oxopropyl}-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinecarboxamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 12, using N-{3-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)amino-3-oxopropyl}-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinecarboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.78-2.22(27H, m), 2.62-3.18 (4H, m), 3.20-3.58(3H, m), 3.64(1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 3.77 (1H, d, J=15.2Hz), 4.13-4.20(1H, m), 6.28-6.40(1H, m), 6.60-6.70(1H, m), 7.16-7.32(15H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₅₄N₄O₃+H)⁺): 663

Example 128

(3S)-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-

propanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)amino}-
methyl)-1,1-dimethylpiperidinium bromide

To 15 mg of (2R)-1-{(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(((3S)-1-methyl-3-piperidyl)-
5 methylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide, 0.5 ml of 10% methyl bromide-
acetonitrile was added at room temperature, followed by 12 hours'
stirring. The solvent in the reaction liquid was distilled off under
reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified by
preparative thin-layer chromatography (aluminium oxide 60F₂₅₄, Art.
10 5713 (Merck), chloroform/methanol = 18/1) to provide 15 mg of the title
compound as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.86-2.30(12H, m), 2.62-3.80
(17H, m), 3.87-3.98(1H, m), 4.36-4.48(1H, m), 4.49-4.62
(2H, m), 7.10-7.36(15H, m), 7.42-7.54(1H, m)

15 ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₄₉N₄O₄)⁺): 637

Example 129

(3S)-1,1-diethyl-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-
triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}-
20 carbonyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium chloride

To 22 mg of (2R)-N-(((3S)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-
{(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide, 1 ml of ethyl iodide was added at
room temperature, followed by 2 hours' stirring at 70°C. The
25 resultant reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform and the solvent
was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was
dissolved in ultrapure water 0.6 ml/methanol 0.1 ml and the solution
was developed on reversed phase medium-pressure liquid

chromatography [ODS-AQ 120-S50 (YMC)]. Purification and anion exchange were conducted by pouring 20 ml of saturated brine, washing with 150 ml of ultrapure water and eluting the title compound with methanol/water = 1/1, to provide 21 mg of the title compound as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.82-2.30(18\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.50-3.88(16\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.37-4.52(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.13-7.36(15\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.57-7.64(1\text{H}, \text{m})$

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4)^+$): 665

Example 130

(3S)-3-((((2R)-1-(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-amino)methyl)-1,1-dipropylpiperidinium iodide

To 4.9 mg of (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3S)-1-propyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide, 1 ml of propyl iodide was added at room temperature, followed by 15 hours' stirring at 100°C under heating. The reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with preparative thin-layer chromatography (aluminium oxide 60F₂₅₄, Art 5713 (Merck), chloroform/methanol = 18/1) to provide 4.1 mg of the title compound as a pale yellow solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.84-0.92(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.01(3\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.1\text{Hz}), 1.06(3\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.1\text{Hz}), 1.16-1.37(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.52-2.12(11\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.18-2.39(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.77-2.93(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.08-3.33(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.35-3.73(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.50(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.8\text{Hz}), 3.82-3.90(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.94(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.8\text{Hz}), 4.31-4.40(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.45-4.60(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.15-7.40(15\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.58-7.66(1\text{H}, \text{m})$

ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{43}\text{H}_{57}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4)^+$): 693

Example 131

(3S)-1,1-dicyclopropylmethyl-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium bromide

5 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 130, using (2R)-N-(((3S)-1-cyclopropylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and cyclopropylmethyl bromide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

10 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.68-1.77(18H, m), 1.80-2.20 (4H, m), 2.22-2.36(1H, m), 2.64-2.78(1H, m), 2.90-3.10(2H, m), 3.30-3.70(8H, m), 3.52(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 3.72-4.01(2H, m), 3.88(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 4.36-4.60(3H, m), 7.16-7.43(15H, m), 7.49-7.70(1H, m)

15 ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₅H₅₇N₄O₄)⁺): 717

Example 132

(3R)-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)amino)-methyl)-1,1-dimethylpiperidinium bromide

20 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 128, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-methyl-3-piperidyl)-methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a
25 white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.83-2.07(9H, m), 2.12-2.34(3H, m), 2.48-2.70(2H, m), 2.86-3.01(2H, m), 3.10-3.47(8H, m), 3.50-3.80(2H, m), 3.55(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 3.71(1H, d, J=14.8Hz), 3.96-4.12(2H, m), 4.30-4.40(1H, m), 4.55-4.62(1H,

m), 4.67-4.76(1H, m), 7.10-7.38(15H, m), 7.58-7.68(1H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₉H₄₉N₄O₄)⁺): 637

Example 133

5 (3R)-1,1-diethyl-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-amino)methyl)piperidinium chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 129, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-
10 {(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.89-1.46(10H, m), 1.68-2.10
(6H, m), 2.20-2.30(2H, m), 2.34-2.50(2H, m), 3.05-3.90
15 (12H, m), 3.60(1H, d, J=15.7Hz), 3.71(1H, d, J=15.7Hz), 4.37-4.45(1H, m), 4.52-4.67(2H, m), 7.13-7.40(15H, m), 7.58-7.69(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₃N₄O₄)⁺): 665

20 Example 134

(3R)-1,1-diallyl-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-amino)methyl)piperidinium bromide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
25 Example 128, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-allyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-{(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and allyl bromide. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-2.28(13H, m), 2.52-2.65

(1H, m), 2.66-2.78(1H, m), 2.78-2.96(1H, m), 3.00-3.12
(1H, m), 3.20-3.49(4H, m), 3.50(1H, d, J=14.3Hz), 3.72
(1H, d, J=14.3Hz), 3.76-3.86(1H, m), 3.88-4.07(3H, m),
4.18-4.30(1H, m), 4.30-4.42(2H, m), 4.50-4.60(2H, m),
5.70-5.78(2H, m), 5.79-5.88(1H, m), 5.90-6.10(2H, m),
7.16-7.38(15H, m), 7.62-7.70(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₃N₄O₄)⁺): 689

Example 135

(3R)-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)amino}-
methyl)-1,1-dipropylpiperidinium chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 129, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-N-(((3R)-1-propyl-3-piperidyl)-
methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and propyl iodide. The compound
was obtained as a pale yellow solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-2.10(19H, m), 2.15-2.32
(2H, m), 2.48-2.60(2H, m), 2.90-3.00(2H, m), 3.01-3.59(9H, m),
3.53(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 3.63-3.80(1H, m), 3.75
(1H, d, J=14.6Hz), 3.88-3.98(1H, m), 4.30-4.38(1H, m),
4.55-4.70(2H, m), 7.15-7.43(15H, m), 7.67-7.77(1H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₇N₄O₄)⁺): 693

Example 136

(3R)-1-butyl-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphen-
ylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-
amino)methyl)-1-methylpiperidinium bromide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 128, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-butyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-

{(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-
carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide and (bromomethyl)cyclopropane.
The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.82-2.17(15H, m), 2.18-2.39
(3H, m), 2.72-2.84(2H, m), 2.85-3.12(3H, m), 3.13-3.78
(9H, m), 3.52(1H, d, J=14.4Hz), 3.71(1H, d, J=14.4Hz),
3.83-4.06(2H, m), 4.32-4.40(1H, m), 4.49-4.82(2H, m),
7.16-7.40(15H, m), 7.56-7.75(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₂H₅₅N₄O₄)⁺): 679

Example 137

(3R)-3-(((2R)-1-(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)amino}-
methyl)-1-methyl-1-(2-methylbutyl)piperidinium bromide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 128, using (2R)-1-(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl)-N-(((3R)-1-(2-methylbutyl)-3-
piperidyl)methyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was
obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.70-2.20(18H, m), 2.22-2.50
(2H, m), 2.78-3.05(4H, m), 3.06-3.80(10H, m), 3.53
(1H, d, J=14.1Hz), 3.69(1H, d, J=14.1Hz), 3.83-3.95(1H, m),
4.08-4.23(1H, m), 4.32-4.80(3H, m), 7.10-7.47(15H, m),
7.48-7.80(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₇N₄O₄)⁺): 693

Example 138

(1R*,3R)- and (1S*,3R)- 3-(((2R)-1-(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-
(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)-

carbonyl)amino}methyl)-1-methyl-1-pentylpiperidinium bromide

After conducting a procedure similar to Example 128, using (2R)-1- {(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-{{{(3R)-1-pentyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide, the resulting diastereomer was separated, to provide the title compound which was expediently named (1R*)-form as a low-polarity substance in the form of a white solid, and the title compound expediently named (1S*)-form, as a high-polarity substance in the form of a white solid.

10 (1R*)-form

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.86-1.21(4H, m), 1.28-1.47(4H, m), 1.50-2.17(13H, m), 2.20-2.37(2H, m), 2.68-2.78(1H, m), 2.88-3.03(2H, m), 3.04-3.20(1H, m), 3.25(3H, s), 3.34-3.68(4H, m), 3.51(1H, d, J=14.1Hz), 3.73(1H, d, J=14.1Hz), 3.98-4.08(2H, m), 4.28-4.40(1H, m), 4.50-4.61(2H, m), 7.18-7.40(15H, m), 7.58-7.65(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₇N₄O₄)⁺): 693

(1S*)-form

20 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.88-1.08(4H, m), 1.28-1.42(4H, m), 1.43-2.02(10H, m), 2.08-2.37(4H, m), 2.97-3.10(2H, m), 3.15(3H, s), 3.16-3.63(7H, m), 3.58(1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 3.71(1H, d, J=15.5Hz), 3.84-3.92(1H, m), 3.92-4.03(1H, m), 4.38-4.42(1H, m), 4.58-4.63(1H, m), 4.76(1H, t, J=8.3Hz), 7.15-7.39(15H, m), 7.66-7.73(1H, m)

25 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₃H₅₇N₄O₄)⁺): 693

Example 139

30 (1R*,3R)- and (1S*,3R)-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}-carbonyl)amino}methyl)-1-methyl-1-octylpiperidinium bromide

After conducting a procedure similar to Example 128, using (2R)-1-{{(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-carbonyl-N-{{{(3R)-1-octyl-3-piperidyl)methyl}pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide}, the resulting diastereomer was separated, to provide the title compound which was expediently named (1R*)-form as a low-polarity substance in the form of a white foamy substance, and the title compound expediently named (1S*)-form, as a high-polarity substance in the form of a white solid.

(1R*)-form

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.87(3H, t, J=6.7Hz), 0.98-2.38(26H, m), 2.73-2.98(3H, m), 3.02-3.14(1H, m), 3.22(3H, s), 3.37-3.62(4H, m), 3.52(1H, d, J=14.2Hz), 3.72(1H, d, J=14.2Hz), 3.93-4.08(2H, m), 4.30-4.38(1H, m), 4.50-4.60(2H, m), 7.18-7.40(15H, m), 7.58-7.65(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₆H₆₃N₄O₄)⁺): 735

(1S*)-form

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.87(3H, t, J=6.7Hz), 0.92-1.10(1H, m), 1.18-2.05(21H, m), 2.10-2.40(4H, m), 2.75-3.60(8H, m), 3.15(3H, s), 3.58(1H, d, J=15.4Hz), 3.72(1H, d, J=15.4Hz), 3.79-3.90(1H, m), 3.93-4.06(1H, m), 4.34-4.45(1H, m), 4.49-4.82(2H, m), 7.15-7.38(15H, m), 7.56-7.75(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₆H₆₃N₄O₄)⁺): 735

Example 140

(3R)-1,1-dicyclopropylmethyl-3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium bromide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 131, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclopropylmethyl-3-piperidyl)-

methylyl-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.54-0.70(3H, m), 0.73-0.85(2H, m),
0.88(4H, t, J=6.6Hz), 1.00-2.25(13H, m), 2.47-2.60(1H, m),
2.70-2.84(2H, m), 2.92-3.10(2H, m), 3.38-3.75(8H, m),
3.78-3.98(3H, m), 4.20-4.40(1H, m), 4.40-4.50(1H, m),
4.52-4.58(1H, m), 7.16-7.42(15H, m), 7.83-7.91(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₅H₅₇N₄O₄)⁺): 717

Example 141

(1R*,3R)- and (1S*,3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-(((2R)-1-
(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbo-
nyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)-carbonyl)amino)methyl-1-methylpiperidinium
bromide

After conducting a procedure similar to Example 128 using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonyl-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide, the resulting diastereomer was separated, to provide the title compound which was expediently named (1R*)-form as a low polarity substance in the form of a white solid, and the title compound expediently named (1S*)-form, as a high-polarity substance in the form of a white solid.

(1R*)-form

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 1.02-2.23(21H, m), 2.30-2.40
(1H, m), 2.67-2.78(1H, m), 2.83-3.02(3H, m), 3.20-3.37
(5H, m), 3.38-3.65(5H, m), 3.56(1H, d, J=14.4Hz), 3.70
(1H, d, J=14.4Hz), 3.84-4.02(1H, m), 4.10-4.19(1H, m),
4.30-4.38(1H, m), 4.40-4.49(2H, m), 7.15-7.40(15H, m),
7.50-7.60(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₅H₅₉N₄O₄)⁺): 719

(1S*)-form

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-2.07(18H, m), 2.18-2.38
(4H, m), 2.72-3.36(10H, m), 3.38-3.50(4H, m), 3.56
(1H, d, J=14.9Hz), 3.73(1H, d, J=14.9Hz), 3.76-3.85(1H, m),
4.02-4.12(1H, m), 4.33-4.40(1H, m), 4.60(1H, d, J=6.6Hz),
4.77(1H, t, J=8.1Hz), 7.12-7.40(15H, m), 7.77(1H, t, J=5.7Hz)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₅H₅₉N₄O₄)⁺): 719

Example 142

(3R)-1-cycloheptylmethyl-3-((((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}-carbonyl)amino)methyl)-1-methylpiperidinium bromide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 128, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-cycloheptylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.83-1.35(6H, m), 1.36-2.02
(14H, m), 2.03-2.21(3H, m), 2.22-2.64(2H, m), 2.80-3.00
(4H, m), 3.08-3.30(5H, m), 3.31-3.74(4H, m), 3.54
(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 3.68(1H, d, J=14.5Hz), 3.82-3.95(1H, m),
4.09-4.18(1H, m), 4.33-4.78(3H, m), 7.10-7.39(15H, m),
7.47-7.72(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₆H₆₁N₄O₄)⁺): 733

Example 143

(3R)-1,1-diethyl-3-((((2R)-1-((2S,3R,4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}-carbonyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 129, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-

{(2S,3R,4S)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.85-2.40(16H, m), 2.92-3.78
(16H, m), 4.18-4.35(3H, m), 4.43-4.58(2H, m), 7.10-7.35
(15H, m), 7.48-7.65(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₃N₄O₅)⁺): 681

Example 144

(3R)-1,1-diethyl-3-(((2R)-1-(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris-(4-chlorophenyl)propanoyl}-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 129, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-chlorophenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 1.26(6H, t, J=7.1Hz),
1.32-2.19(11H, m), 2.20-2.35(2H, m), 2.38-2.49(1H, m),
3.17-3.85(12H, m), 3.92-4.03(1H, m), 4.16-4.30(1H, m),
4.39-4.44(1H, m), 4.56-4.60(1H, m), 4.72-4.81(1H, m),
7.06-7.18(6H, m), 7.20-7.30(6H, m), 7.60-7.67(1H, m)

ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₀Cl₃N₄O₄)⁺): 767

Example 145

(3R)-1,1-diethyl-3-(((2R)-1-(((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris-(4-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to

Example 129, using (2R)-N-(((3R)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-{3,3,3-tris(4-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl)carbonylpyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

5 $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.82-1.20(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.22(9\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.5\text{Hz}), 1.30-2.55(17\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.61(6\text{H}, \text{q}, J=7.5\text{Hz}), 2.74-4.30(14\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.32-4.46(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.47-4.56(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.01-7.22(12\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.50-7.75(1\text{H}, \text{m})$
ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{47}\text{H}_{65}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4)^+$): 749

10

Example 146

(3R)-1-heptyl-1-methyl-3-(((3-((2-((3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-amino)acetyl)amino)propanoyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium bromide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
15 Example 128, using N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-heptyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80-2.60(20\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.82-3.82(17\text{H}, \text{m}), 6.62-6.88(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.09-7.40(16\text{H}, \text{m}),$
20 $7.85-7.99(1\text{H}, \text{m})$
FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{55}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3)^+$): 639

Example 147

(3R)-1-heptyl-1-methyl-3-(((3-((2-((3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-(methyl)amino)acetyl)amino)propanoyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium bromide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 128, using N-{2-(3-(((3R)-1-heptyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-3-oxopropyl)amino-2-oxoethyl}-N-methyl-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide.

30

The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.32(20\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.45\text{-}4.05$
 $(20\text{H}, \text{m}), 6.88\text{-}8.13(17\text{H}, \text{m})$

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{57}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3)^+$): 653

5

Example 148

1-Cyclooctylmethyl-1-ethyl-3-((6-((3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
amino}hexanoyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium iodide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
10 Example 130, using N-(6-((1-cyclooctylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)-
amino-6-oxohexyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide and ethyl iodide.
The compound was obtained as a pale yellow solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CD}_3\text{OD}, \delta\text{ppm}): 1.00\text{-}2.27(31\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.78\text{-}2.97$
 $(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.02\text{-}3.54(9\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.60(2\text{H}, \text{s}), 7.12\text{-}7.30(15\text{H}, \text{m})$

15 FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{44}\text{H}_{62}\text{N}_3\text{O}_2)^+$): 664

Example 149

(3S)-1-ethyl-1-((2S)-2-methylbutyl)-3-((6-((3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)amino}hexanoyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium iodide

20 (Step 1)

Synthesis of N-{6-((3S)-1-((2S)-2-methylbutyl)-3-piperidyl)-
methyl}amino-6-oxohexyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 77, using (3S)-3-aminomethyl-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-
25 piperidine and (2S)-2-methylbutane iodide. The compound was
obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.86\text{-}0.92(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 0.98\text{-}1.18$
 $(6\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.37\text{-}1.73(7\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.82\text{-}2.00(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.18$
 $(2\text{H}, \text{t}, J=7.4\text{Hz}), 2.20\text{-}2.28(3\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.68\text{-}2.80(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.91$

30

(2H, dd, J=6.0, 12.5Hz), 3.09-3.28(2H, m), 3.56(2H, s),
4.80-4.88(1H, m), 5.78-5.88(1H, m), 7.17-7.32(15H, m)
FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₈H₅₁N₃O₂+H)⁺): 582

(Step 2)

5 Synthesis of (3S)-1-ethyl-1-((2S)-2-methylbutyl)-3-((6-
 ((3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)amino}hexanoyl)amino)methyl)-
piperidinium iodide

 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 148, using N-{6-((3S)-1-((2S)-2-methylbutyl)-3-piperidyl)-
10 methylamino-6-oxohexyl}-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide. The title
compound was obtained as a yellow oily substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.98(3H, t, J=7.4Hz),
 1.01-1.78(15H, m), 1.80-2.10(3H, m), 2.27(2H, t, J=7.5Hz),
 2.42-2.58(1H, m), 2.89(2H, dd, J=5.9,12.0Hz), 3.02-3.70
15 (10H, m), 3.56(2H, s), 3.76-3.90(1H, m), 5.03-5.12(1H, m),
 7.17-7.35(15H, m), 7.50-7.60(1H, m)
 FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₅₆N₃O₂)⁺): 610

Example 150

20 (3S)-1-ethyl-1-((2S)-2-methylbutyl)-3-((6-((3,3,3-triphenyl-
 propanoyl)amino}hexanoyl)amino)methyl)piperidinium chloride

(Step 1)

 Synthesis of N-(6-(((3S)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-6-
oxohexyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide

25 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 27, using (3S)-3-aminomethyl-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-
piperidine and acetaldehyde. The compound was obtained as a white
solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.90-1.16(8H, m), 1.43-1.80(7H, m),
30 1.90(1H, t, J=10.8Hz), 2.06(2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.38

(2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 2.77-2.85(2H, m), 2.86-2.96(2H, m),
3.10-3.20(2H, m), 3.56(2H, s), 4.80-4.90(1H, m), 5.62-5.72
(1H, m), 7.17-7.32(15H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₃₅H₄₅N₃O₂+H)⁺): 540

5 (Step 2)

Synthesis of (3S)-1-ethyl-1-((2S)-2-methylbutyl)-3-
(((6-((3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)amino)hexanoyl)amino)methyl)-
piperidinium chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
10 Example 129, using N-(6-(((3S)-1-ethyl-3-piperidyl)methyl)amino-
6-oxohexyl)-3,3,3-triphenylpropanamide and (2S)-2-methylbutane
iodide. The compound was obtained as a white foamy substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.86-1.73(18H, m), 1.80-2.10
(3H, m), 2.20-2.37(2H, m), 2.39-2.56(1H, m), 2.87-2.95(2H, m),
15 3.08-3.70(10H, m), 3.56(2H, s), 3.87-4.05(1H, m),
5.18-5.28(1H, m), 7.14-7.38(15H, m), 8.40-8.58(1H, m)

FAB-MS(m/e, as (C₄₀H₅₆N₃O₂)⁺): 610

Example 151

20 (7R)-7-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)amino}-
methyl)-5-azoniaspiro [4.5]decane chloride

The method of Japan Kokai (laid-open) No. Sho 62(1987)-
215588 A1 was followed. In 0.6 ml of chloroform, 41 mg of (2R)-1-
25 {(2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}-
carbonyl-N-((3S)-3-piperidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide, 0.014
ml of diethylamine and 0.032 ml of 1,4-dibromobutane were dissolved,
and the solution was allowed to stand in a hermetically sealed vessel
for 6 days. The reaction liquid was diluted with chloroform and the
30 solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant

residue was dissolved in a mixture of ultrapure water 0.6 ml/methanol 0.1 ml, and developed on a reversed phase medium pressure liquid chromatography [ODS-AQ 120-S50 (YMC). The product was purified and anion-exchanged by pouring 20 ml of saturated brine, washing with 150 ml of ultrapure water, and eluting from methanol/water = 1/1, to provide 45 mg of the title compound as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 0.88(2H, t, $J=6.8\text{Hz}$), 0.98-1.18 (1H, m), 1.21-1.34(3H, m), 1.65-2.38(12H, m), 2.52-2.68 (1H, m), 2.98-3.17(3H, m), 3.20-3.60(5H, m), 3.56 (1H, d, $J=14.4\text{Hz}$), 3.70(1H, d, $J=14.4\text{Hz}$), 3.79-3.95(2H, m), 3.96-4.04(1H, m), 4.37-4.41(1H, m), 4.51-4.60(2H, m), 7.17-7.39(15H, m), 7.56(1H, t, $J=6.0\text{Hz}$)
FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4)^+$): 663

Example 152

(7R)-7-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl)amino)-methyl)-5-azoniaspiro [4.5]dec-2-en chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 151, using 1,4-dibromo-2-butene which was synthesized following the method of M. A. Keegstra, et al. [*Syn. Commun.* Vol. 21, 721-726 (1991)]. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm})$: 0.80-2.80(15H, m), 2.99-4.62 (16H, m), 5.80-6.00(2H, m), 7.15-7.68(16H, m)
ESI-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4)^+$): 661

Example 153

(2R)-2-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-

propanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)amino}-
methyl)-6-azoniaspiro [5.5] undecane chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 151, using 1,5-dibromopentane. The compound was
5 obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.88(2\text{H}, \text{t}, J=6.6\text{Hz}), 0.98-1.13$
(1H, m), 1.20-1.36(3H, m), 1.68-2.07(10H, m), 2.08-2.32
(3H, m), 2.40-2.52(1H, m), 2.80-2.95(1H, m), 3.04-3.20(2H, m),
3.22-3.80(7H, m), 3.57(1H, d, $J=15.3\text{Hz}$), 3.68
10 (1H, d, $J=15.3\text{Hz}$), 3.88-3.96(1H, m), 4.07-4.16
(1H, m), 4.38-4.43(1H, m), 4.56-4.68(2H, m), 7.17-7.39
(15H, m), 7.64(1H, t, $J=6.5\text{Hz}$)

FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{42}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4)^+$): 677

15 Example 154

(2R)-2-((((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)amino)-
methyl)-9,9-dimethyl-6-azoniaspiro [5.5] undecane chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
20 Example 151, using 1,5-dibromo-3,3-dimethylpentane. The
compound was obtained as a white solid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80-2.33(18\text{H}, \text{m}), 1.09(3\text{H}, \text{s}),$
1.24(3H, s), 2.60-3.92(12H, m), 3.52(1H, d, $J=14.5\text{Hz}$),
3.68(1H, d, $J=14.5\text{Hz}$), 4.26-4.56(3H, m), 7.15-7.66(16H, m)

25 FAB-MS(m/e , as $(\text{C}_{44}\text{H}_{57}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4)^+$): 705

Example 155

(8R)-8-((((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)amino)-
30 methyl)-3-oxa-6-azoniaspiro [5.5] undecane chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 151, using 2,2'-dichlorodiethyl ether. The compound was obtained as a white solid.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-2.78(17H, m), 2.95-4.51
5 (18H, m), 7.12-7.78(16H, m)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₅₁N₄O₅)⁺): 679

Example 156

(7R)-2,3-epoxy-7-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-
10 triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-
amino}methyl)-5-azoniaspiro [4.5] decane chloride

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Example 151, using 1,4-dibromo-2,3-epoxybutane (cf. Referential Example 10). The compound was obtained as a white solid.

15 ¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.80-2.50(17H, m), 2.60-4.85
(16H, m), 7.10-7.45(15H, m), 7.58-7.80(1H, m)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₄₁H₄₉N₄O₅)⁺): 677

Example 157

20 3-(((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)-
2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)amino}methyl)-1,1-
dimethylpyrrolidinium bromide

(Step 1)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
25 propanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(3-pyrrolidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-
2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Step 5 of Example 1 and Example 46, using 3-aminomethyl-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyrrolidine [which was synthesized

by a method similar to the one described in Japan Kokai Hei
11(1999)-193232, using 3-hydroxymethyl-1-benzylpyrrolidine [taught
in Japan Kokai (laid-open) Hei 4(1992)-112868]] and (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-
4-(tert-butoxy)-1-(3,3,3-triphenylpropanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-p
5 pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.80\text{-}2.34(9\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.49\text{-}2.64(1\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $2.67\text{-}2.81(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.82\text{-}3.29(7\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.30\text{-}3.42(1\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $3.43\text{-}3.65(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.70\text{-}3.90(2\text{H}, \text{m}), 4.29\text{-}4.43(2\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $4.49\text{-}4.61(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.13\text{-}7.57(16\text{H}, \text{m})$

10 ESI-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{42}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 595

(Step 2)

Synthesis of (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-((1-methyl-3-pyrrolidyl)methyl)-
pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide

15 The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
Example 48, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-
propanoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-(3-pyrrolidylmethyl)pyrrolidine-
2-carboxamide.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3, \delta\text{ppm}): 0.83\text{-}2.12(9\text{H}, \text{m}), 2.20\text{-}2.46(3\text{H}, \text{m}),$
20 $2.31(3\text{H}, \text{s}), 2.49\text{-}2.83(4\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.10\text{-}3.27(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.29\text{-}3.40$
 $(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.42(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.5\text{Hz}), 3.56\text{-}3.62(1\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $3.77\text{-}3.85(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 3.87(1\text{H}, \text{d}, J=14.5\text{Hz}), 4.30\text{-}4.39(2\text{H}, \text{m}),$
 $4.52\text{-}4.59(1\text{H}, \text{m}), 7.15\text{-}7.39(16\text{H}, \text{m})$

ESI-MS(m/e, as $(\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4+\text{H})^+$): 609

25 (Step 3)

Synthesis of 3-((((2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-
triphenylpropanoyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl}carbonyl)-2-pyrrolidinyl)-
carbonyl)amino)methyl)-1,1-dimethylpyrrolidinium bromide

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to
30 Example 130, using (2R)-1-((2S,4R)-4-hydroxy-1-(3,3,3-triphenyl-

propanoyl}pyrrolidin-2-yl}carbonyl-N-{(1-methyl-3-pyrrolidyl)methyl}-pyrrolidine-2-carboxamide. The compound was obtained as a colorless oily substance.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃, δppm): 0.82-2.35(9H, m), 2.52-2.70(1H, m),
5 2.72-2.89(1H, m), 3.00-3.89(18H, m), 4.25-4.60(2H, m),
7.10-7.40(15H, m), 7.48-7.78(1H, m)
ESI-MS(m/e, as (C₃₈H₄₇N₄O₄)⁺): 623

Referential Example 1

10 (3R)-3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine

(Step 1)

Synthesis of ethyl (3S)-3-piperidinecarboxylate

To 13.0 g of ethyl (3S)-3-piperidinecarboxylate D(-)-
tartarate which was synthesized following the method of P. Magnus,
15 et al. [*J. Org. Chem.* Vol. 56, 1166-1170 (1991)], 3N aqueous sodium
hydroxide solution was added to render the former basic, followed by
extraction with chloroform and drying over anhydrous magnesium
sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 7.50 g of
the title compound was obtained.

20 (Step 2)

Synthesis of (3S)-3-piperidylmethanol

To solution of 7.50 g of ethyl (3S)-3-piperidinecarboxylate in
200 ml of tetrahydrofuran, 3.4 g of lithium aluminium hydrate was
added under cooling with ice, followed by an hour's refluxing under
25 heating. To the reaction liquid sodium sulfate decahydrate was
added under cooling with ice, followed by 12 hours' stirring at room
temperature and filtration through cerite. Distilling the filtrate off
under reduced pressure, 5.89 g of the title compound was obtained.

(Step 3)

30 Synthesis of {(3S)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl}-

methanol

To a solution of 5.89 g of (3S)-3-piperidylmethanol in 150 ml of chloroform, another solution of 9.3 g of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate in 50 ml of chloroform was added under cooling with ice, followed by 15 hours' stirring at room temperature. The reaction liquid was distilled off under reduced pressure, diluted with diethyl ether, washed successively with 0.5 N hydrochloric acid, water and saturated brine, and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 8.01 g of the title compound was obtained.

(Step 4)

Synthesis of {(3S)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl}-methyl methanesulfonate

To a solution of 7.96 g of {(3S)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl}methanol in 150 ml of chloroform, 3.4 ml of methanesulfonyl chloride and 6.7 ml of triethylamine were added under cooling with ice, followed by an hour's stirring at room temperature. The reaction liquid was distilled off under reduced pressure, diluted with ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added, followed by 1.5 hours' stirring. Thereafter the reaction liquid was successively washed with water and saturated brine and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off, 10.50 g of the title compound was obtained.

(Step 5)

Synthesis of (3S)-3-azidomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-piperidine

To a solution of 10.50 of {(3S)-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-3-piperidyl}methyl methanesulfonate in 100 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, 4.9 g of sodium azide was added at room temperature, followed by 4 hours' stirring at 80°C under heating. The reaction liquid was

diluted with ethyl acetate, washed successively with water and saturated brine, and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and resulting residue was purified by means of silica gel column chromatography (eluting solvent: from hexane to hexane/ethyl acetate = 15/1) to provide 7.24 g of the title compound.

(Step 6)

Synthesis of (3R)-3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-piperidine

To a solution of 600 mg of (3S)-3-azidomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine in 12.5 ml of 20% hydrous tetrahydrofuran, 622 mg of triphenylphosphine was added at room temperature, followed by 45 minutes' refluxing under heating. The reaction liquid was rendered acidic by addition of 0.5 N hydrochloric acid, and successively washed with chloroform and ethyl acetate. Then 4N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution was added to the aqueous layer to render the latter basic, followed by extraction with chloroform and drying over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 497 mg of the title compound was obtained.

Referential Example 2

(3R)-3-aminomethyl-1-(cyclohexylmethyl)piperidine

(Step 1)

Synthesis of ((3S)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methanol

To a solution of 900 mg of (3S)-3-piperidylmethanol in 60 ml of tetrahydrofuran, 1.05 g of cyclohexanecarbaldehyde, 0.54 ml of acetic acid and 2.5 g of sodium triacetoxyborohydrate were successively added at room temperature by the order stated, followed by 21 hours' stirring at the same temperature. The reaction liquid was rendered acidic with 1N hydrochloric acid and washed with

chloroform. The aqueous layer was rendered basic with 4N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, followed by extraction with chloroform and drying over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 990 mg of the title compound was obtained.

5 (Step 2)

Synthesis of (3R)-3-aminomethyl-1-(cyclohexylmethyl)-piperidine

The title compound was prepared by procedures similar to Steps 4-6 of Referential Example 1, using ((3S)-1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-piperidyl)methanol.

Referential Example 3

(3S)-3-aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine

The title compound was prepared by a method similar to Referential Example 1, using ethyl (3R)-3-piperidinecarboxylate L⁽⁺⁾-tartarate which was synthesized following the method of P. Magnus, et al. [J. Org. Chem., Vol. 56, pp. 1166-1170 (1991)].

Referential Example 4

20 3-Aminomethyl-1-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine

The title compound was prepared by procedures similar to Steps 2-6 of Referential Example 1, using ethyl 3-piperidine-carboxylate.

25 Referential Example 5

3-Aminomethyl-1-(cyclohexylmethyl)piperidine

The title compound was prepared by successively conducting procedures similar to Step 2 of Referential Example 1 and Referential

Example 2, using ethyl 3-piperidinecarboxylate.

Referential Example 6

3,3,3-Tris(4-fluorophenyl)propionic acid

5 The synthesis was conducted referring to the method of Fan Benlun, et al. [Yiyao Gongye, Vol. 9, pp. 2-4 (1983)]. In 1.1 ml of acetic acid, 1.0 g of 3,3,3-tris (4-fluorophenyl) methanol was suspended. To the suspension 541 mg of cyanoacetic acid and 230 mg of zinc chloride were added at room temperature, followed by 4
10 hours' stirring at 130°C under heating. The reaction liquid was cooled to room temperature, and 1.8 ml of conc. sulfuric acid and 0.64 ml of acetic anhydride were added, followed by 17 hours' stirring at 130°C under heating. The reaction liquid was cooled to room temperature, diluted with water and filtered. The filter cake was
15 thoroughly washed with waterto provide 940 mg of the title compound.

Referential Example 7

Cyclopentylmethyl methanesulfonate

20 The title compound was synthesized by a method similar to Step 4 of Referential Example 1, using cyclopentylmethanol.

Referential Example 8

2-(1-Methylcyclopropan-1-yl)acetaldehyde

25 (Step 1)

Synthesis of 1-methylcyclopropane-1-carbaldehyde

To a solution of 0.5 ml of 2-cyclopropanepropanol in 6 ml of dimethyl sulfoxide, 3 ml of triethylamine and a solution of 2.5 g of sulfur trioxide-pyridine complex in 4 ml of dimethyl sulfoxide were

successively added at room temperature, followed by 4.5 hours' stirring at the same temperature. The reaction solution was poured into water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the organic layer was washed with water and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate.

- 5 Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, about 10 ml of a diethyl ether solution of the title compound was obtained.

(Step 2)

Synthesis of 2-(1-methylcyclopropan-1-yl)acetaldehyde

- 10 Methoxymethyltriphenylphosphonium chloride 2.57 g was suspended in 40 ml of diethyl ether, and to the suspension n-butyl lithium (1.47 M hexane solution, 8.0 ml) was added under cooling with ice, followed by 2 hours' stirring at room temperature. Then 10 ml of a diethyl ether solution of 1-methylcyclopropane-1-carbaldehyde was added at room temperature, followed by an hour's stirring at the
- 15 same temperature. The reaction solution was poured into water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the organic layer was washed with water and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under slightly reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was dissolved in 10 ml of tetrahydrofuran. To the solution 10
- 20 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid and 5 ml of water were added at room temperature, followed by 12 hours' stirring at the same temperature. The reaction solution was poured into water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the organic layer was washed with water and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under
- 25 reduced pressure, about 15 ml of a diethyl ether solution of the title compound was obtained.

Referential Example 9

1-(Cyclopentyl)ethyl 4-methylbenzenesulfonate

- 30 To 0.9 ml of a pyridine solution of 1-cyclopentaneethanol, 309 mg of 4-methylbenzenesulfonyl chloride was added under cooling with

ice, followed by 6.5 hours' stirring at room temperature. A hydrochloric acid solution was added under cooling with ice to render the reaction liquid acidic, followed by extraction with ethyl acetate. The organic solvent layer was washed with saturated brine and dried
5 over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 324 mg of the title compound was obtained.

Referential Example 10

Preparation of 1,4-dibromo-2,3-epoxybutane

10 To a solution of 500 mg of 1,4-dibromo-2-butene in 1 ml of chloroform, 485 mg of meta-chloroperbenzoic acid was added under cooling with ice, followed by 20 hours' stirring at room temperature. Further 606 mg of meta-chloroperbenzoic acid was added, followed by 3 days' stirring. The reaction liquid was then poured into a mixed
15 aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and sodium thiosulfate, extracted with chloroform and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. Distilling the solvent off under reduced pressure, 512 mg of the title compound was obtained.

20 Industrial Applicability

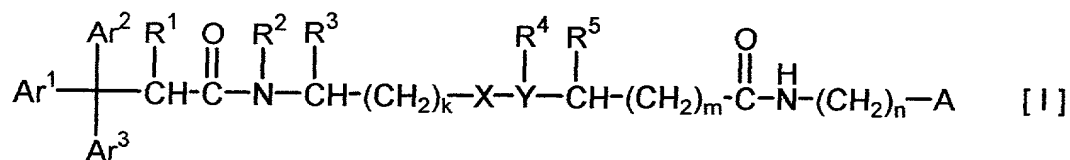
Because those compounds of the present invention exhibit selective antagonism to muscarinic M_3 receptors, they are useful as safe and effective treating agents of diseases of the respiratory, urinary or digestive systems, exhibiting little side effect.

25

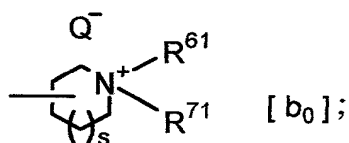
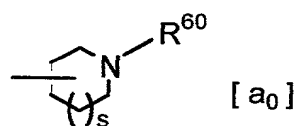
30

CLAIMS

- Compounds which are represented by the following general formula [I]



[in which A stands for a group of the following formula [a₀] or [b₀]

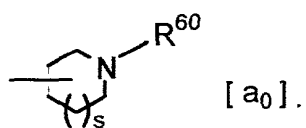


Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ each independently stands for optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl; k means 0 or 1; m, n and s each independently means 0, 1 or 2; R¹ stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl; R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl, or R² and R³, or R⁴ and R⁵, may together stand for, independently of each other, optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene,

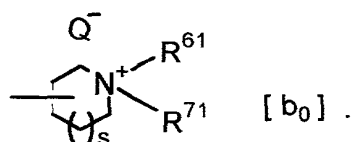
tetramethylene or 2-butenylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by $-R^7$, R^7 standing for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxycarbonyl and imidazolyl; R^{60} stands for hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; R^{61} and R^{71} each independently stands for C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl, or R^{61} and R^{71} may together stand for optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2, 3-epoxytetramethylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy; X stands for carbonyl or methylene; Y stands for nitrogen or methine; and Q^- stands for anion]

or salts thereof.

2. The compounds according to Claim 1, in which A is a group expressed by the formula [a₀]

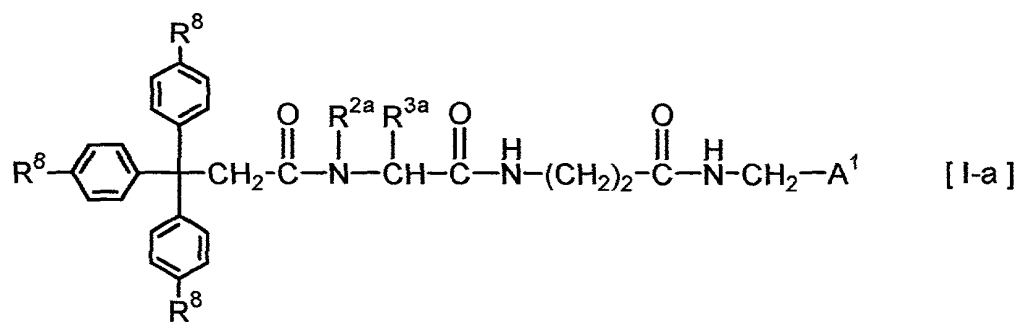


3. The compounds according to Claim 1, in which A is a group expressed by the formula [b₀]

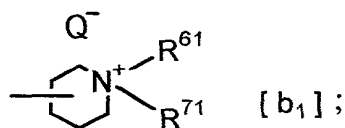
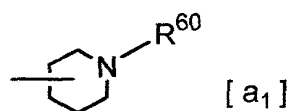


4. The compounds according to Claim 1, in which Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ each independently stands for phenyl which is optionally substituted with halogen or lower alkyl; n is 1 or 2; s is 1; and R¹ is hydrogen.

5. The compounds according to Claim 4, which are represented by the general formula [I-a]:

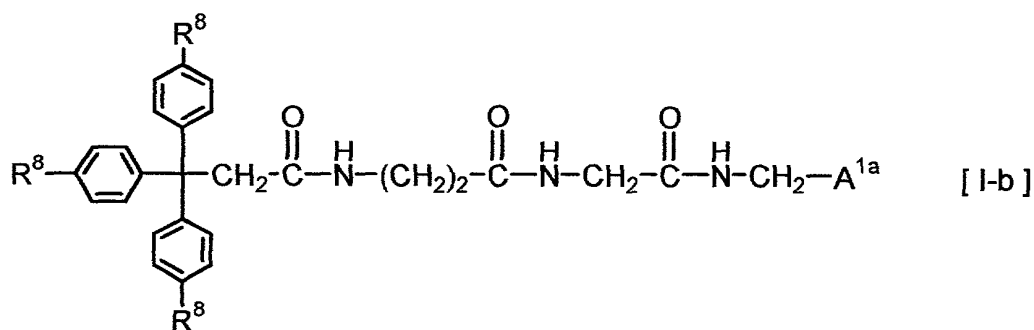


[wherein A¹ stands for a group represented by the formula [a₁]
or [b₁]

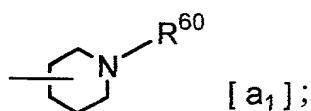


R^{2a} and R^{3a} each independently stands for hydrogen, or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl; R⁸ stands for hydrogen, halogen or lower alkyl; R⁶⁰ stands for hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ each independently stands for C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl, or R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ may together stand for optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2, 3-epoxytetramethylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy; and Q⁻ stands for anion].

6. The compounds according to Claim 4, which are represented by the general formula [I-b]:

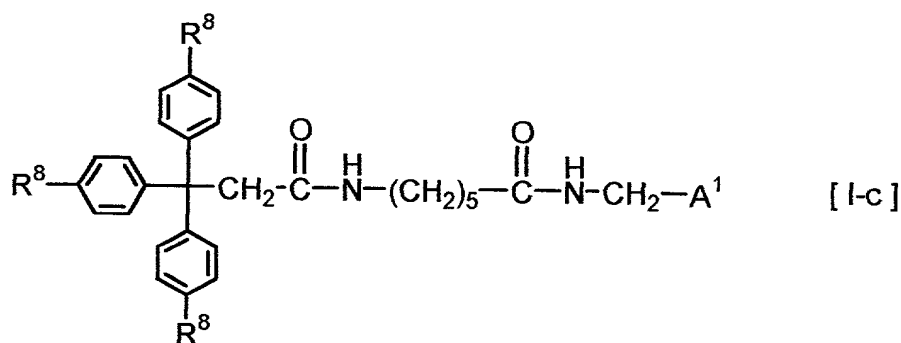


[wherein A^{1a} stands for a group of the formula [a₁]

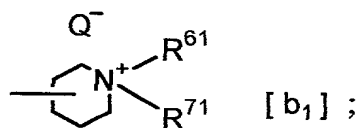
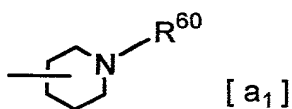


R⁸ stands for hydrogen, halogen or lower alkyl; and R⁶⁰ stands for hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl.

7. The compounds according to Claim 4, which are represented by the general formula [I-c]:



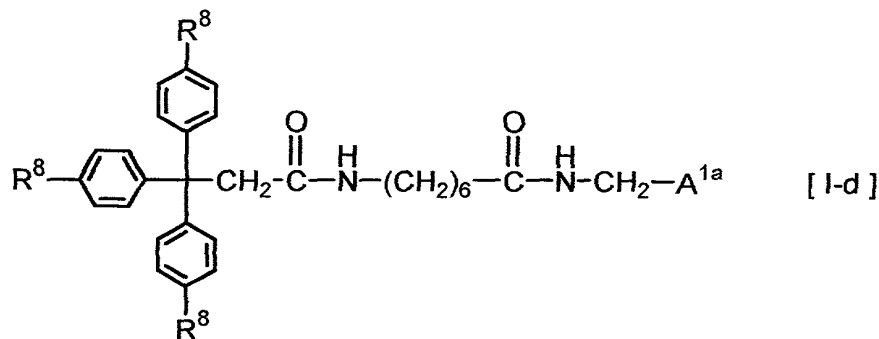
[in which A¹ stands for a group represented by the formula [a₁] or [b₁]



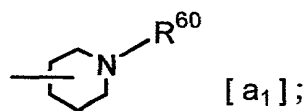
R⁸ stands for hydrogen, halogen or lower alkyl; R⁶⁰ stands for hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ each independently stands for C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl,

cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl, or R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ may together stand for optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2, 3-epoxytetramethylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy; and Q⁻ stands for anion].

8. The compounds according to Claim 4, which are represented by the general formula [I-d]

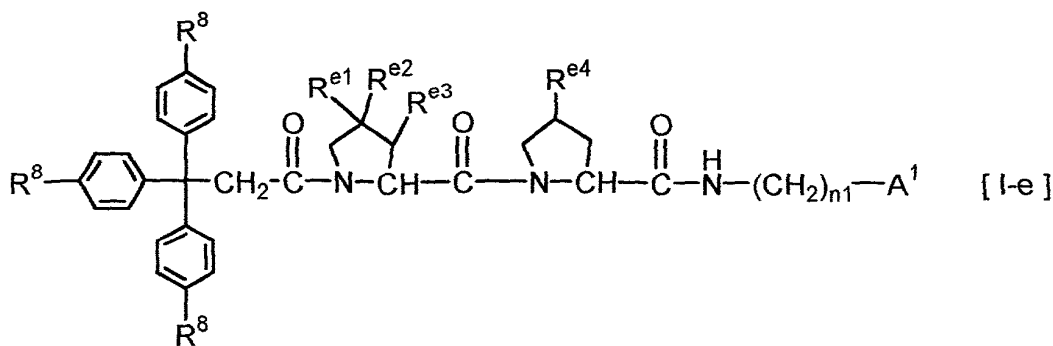


[in which A^{1a} stands for a group of the formula [a₁]]

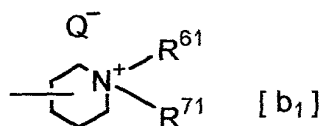
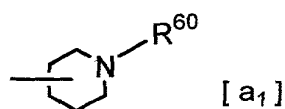


R⁸ stands for hydrogen, halogen or lower alkyl; R⁶⁰ stands for hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl.

9. The compounds according to Claim 4, which are represented by the general formula [I-e]



[in which A¹ stands for a group represented by the formula [a₁]
or [b₁]



n₁ stands for 1 or 2; R^{e1}, R^{e2}, R^{e3} and R^{e4} each independently stands for hydrogen, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by -R⁷; or R^{e1} and R^{e2} together signify oxo group; R⁷ stands for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxycarbonyl and imidazolyl; R⁸ stands for hydrogen, halogen or lower alkyl; R⁶⁰ stands for hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ each independently stands for C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl,

cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl, or R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ may together stand for optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2, 3-epoxytetramethylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy; and Q⁻ stands for anion].

10. The compounds according to Claim 9, in which R^{e1} is hydrogen or hydroxyl, and all of R^{e2}, R^{e3} and R^{e4} are hydrogen.
11. The compounds according to Claim 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 or 10, in which R⁶⁰ is hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl.
12. The compounds according to Claim 11, in which said C₁-C₁₀ alkyl as R⁶⁰ is methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, pentyl, 2-methylbutyl, hexyl, 2-methylpentyl, heptyl, octyl or decyl.
13. The compounds according to Claim 11, in which said cycloalkyl group as R⁶⁰ is cyclopentyl or cyclohexyl.
14. The compounds according to Claim 11, in which said cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl as R⁶⁰ is cyclopropylmethyl, cyclobutylmethyl, 2-(1-methylcyclopropyl)ethyl, cyclopentylmethyl, (2,2-dimethylcyclopentyl)methyl, 1-cyclopentylethyl, cyclohexylmethyl or 1-cyclohexylethyl.
15. The compounds according to Claim 1, 3, 4, 5, 7 or 9, in which R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ each independently is C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl or cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with

lower alkyl.

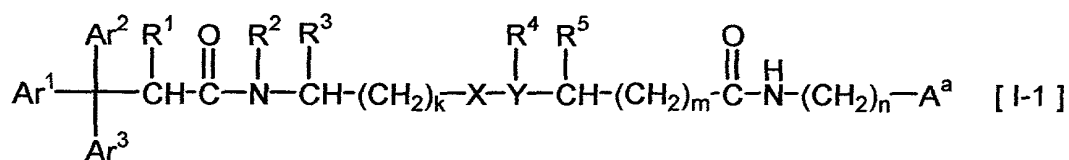
16. The compounds according to Claim 15, in which R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ each independently is C₁-C₆ alkyl.

17. The compounds according to Claim 16, in which R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ each independently is methyl, ethyl, propyl or 2-methylbutyl.

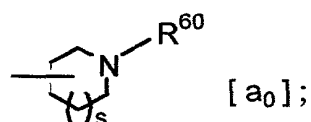
18. The compounds according to Claim 15, in which both R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ are 2-propenyl or cyclopropylmethyl; or R⁶¹ is cyclohexylmethyl and R⁷¹ is methyl.

19. The compounds according to Claim 1, 3, 4, 5, 7 or 9, in which R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ together stand for optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy.

20. A process for producing a compound represented by the general formula [I-1]:



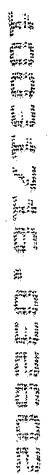
[in which A^a stands for a group of the formula [a₀]



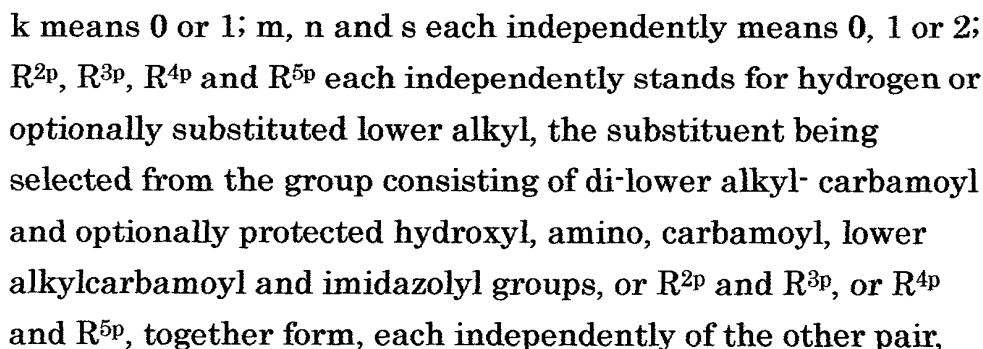
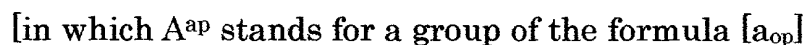
Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ each independently stands for optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the

group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl; R^1 stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl; R^2 , R^3 , R^4 and R^5 each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl, or R^2 and R^3 , or R^4 and R^5 , may together stand for, independently of each other, optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by $-R^7$, R^7 standing for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxycarbonyl and imidazolyl; R^{60} stands for hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; and k, m, n, s, X and Y have later defined significations]

or salts thereof, which comprises reacting carboxylic acid of the general formula [III]:

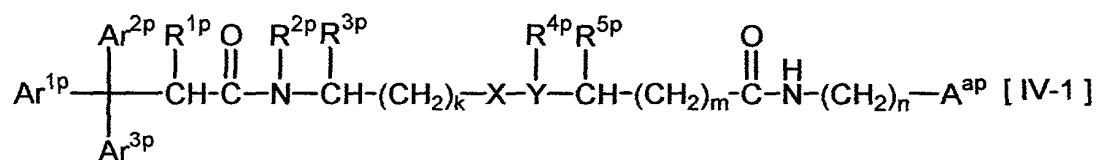


or salt or reactive derivative thereof with a compound of the general formula [III]:



optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, di-lower alkylamino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, a group represented by $-R^{7p}$ and optionally protected oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups; R^{7p} stands for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and lower alkoxycarbonyl, and optionally protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups; R^{60p} stands for imino-protecting group, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion being optionally substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; X stands for carbonyl or methylene; and Y stands for nitrogen or methine]

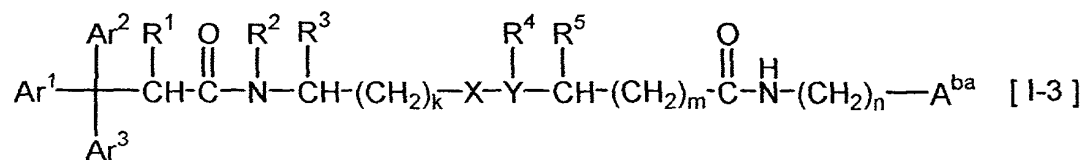
or a salt thereof to form a compound represented by the general formula [IV-1]



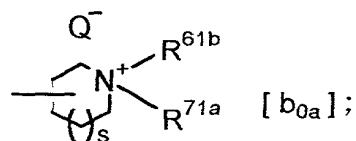
[in which A^{ap} , Ar^{1p} , Ar^{2p} , Ar^{3p} , k , m , n , R^{1p} , R^{2p} , R^{3p} , R^{4p} , R^{5p} , X and Y have the above significations]

or a salt thereof, and if necessary removing the protective group(s).

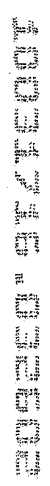
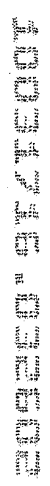
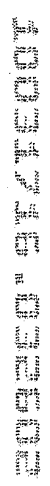
21. A process for producing a compound represented by the general formula [I-3]:



[in which A^{ba} signifies a group expressed by the formula [b_{0a}]

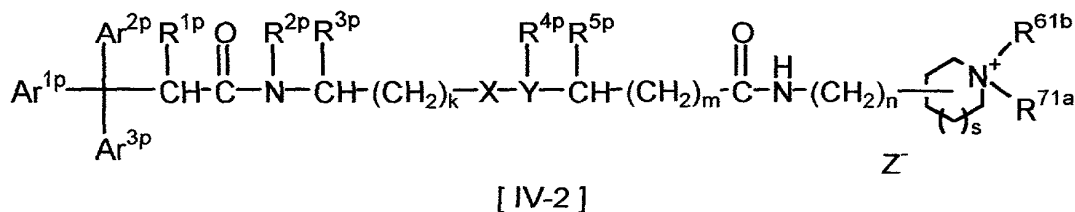


Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ each independently stands for optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl; R¹ stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl; R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl, or R² and R³, or R⁴ and R⁵, may together stand for, independently of each other, optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxy-carbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl,

[illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible]

hydroxyl, carbamoyl and lower alkylcarbamoyl; k means 0 or 1; m, n and s each independently means 0, 1 or 2; R^{1p} stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, optionally protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups; R^{2p}, R^{3p}, R^{4p} and R^{5p} each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and optionally protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups, or R^{2p} and R^{3p}, or R^{4p} and R^{5p}, together form, each independently of the other pair, optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, di-lower alkylamino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, a group represented by -R^{7p} and optionally protected oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups; R^{7p} stands for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and lower alkoxycarbonyl, and optionally protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups; R^{61b} signifies C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; X stands for carbonyl or methylene; and Y stands for nitrogen or methine]

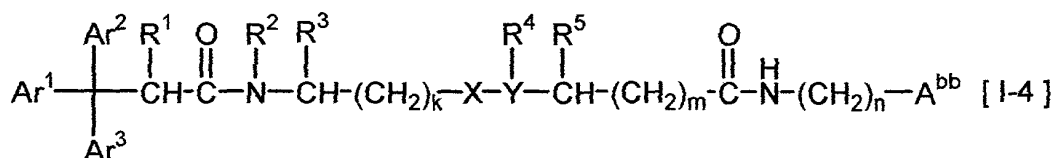
or salt thereof, to form a compound represented by the general formula [IV-2]:



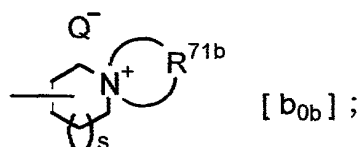
[in which Z^- signifies anion; Ar^{1p} , Ar^{2p} , Ar^{3p} , k , m , n , s , R^{1p} , R^{2p} , R^{3p} , R^{4p} , R^{5p} , R^{61b} , R^{71a} , X and Y have the earlier defined significations]

and if necessary removing the protective group(s) and/or exchanging the anion.

22. A process for producing a compound represented by the general formula [I-4]:



[in which A^{bb} signifies a group expressed by the formula $[\text{b}_{0b}]$:



Ar^1 , Ar^2 and Ar^3 each independently stands for optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl; R^1 stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from

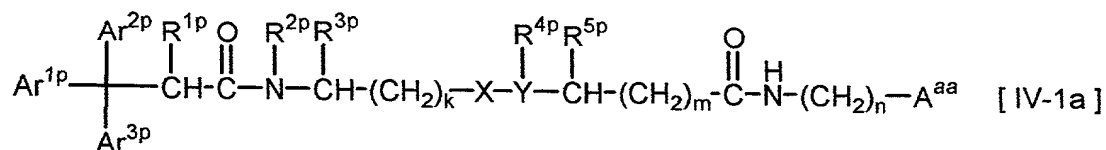
the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl; R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl, or R² and R³, or R⁴ and R⁵, may together stand for, independently of each other, optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by -R⁷, R⁷ standing for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkyl carbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxycarbonyl and imidazolyl; R^{71b} signifies optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2, 3-epoxytetramethylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy; Q⁻ stands for anion; and k, m, n, s, X and Y have the later defined significations]

which comprises reacting a compound represented by the general formula [VII]:

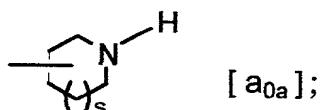


[in which L³ and L⁴ each independently signifies a leaving

group; and R^{71bp} signifies optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2,3-epoxytetramethylene, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, and optionally protected oxo and hydroxyl] or a salt thereof with a compound of a general formula [IV-1a]



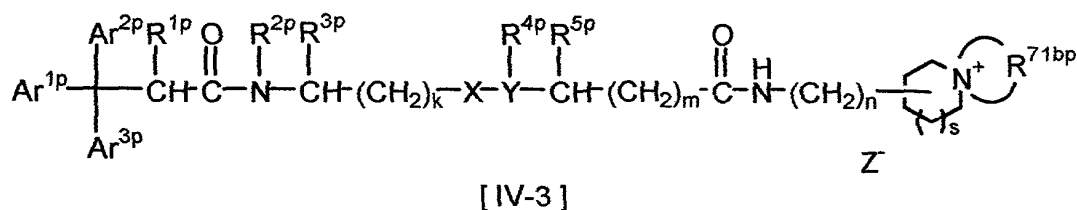
[in which A^{aa} signifies a group represented by the formula
[a_{0a}]



Ar^{1p}, Ar^{2p} and Ar^{3p} each independently stands for optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and optionally protected hydroxyl, carbamoyl and lower alkylcarbamoyl; k means 0 or 1; m, n and s each independently means 0, 1 or 2; R^{1p} stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, optionally protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups; R^{2p}, R^{3p}, R^{4p} and R^{5p} each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and optionally protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups, or R^{2p} and R^{3p}, or R^{4p} and R^{5p}, together form, each

independently of the other pair, optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, di-lower alkylamino, lower alkoxy carbonyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, a group represented by $-R^{7p}$ and optionally protected oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxy carbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups; R^{7p} stands for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and lower alkoxy carbonyl, and optionally protected hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl groups; X stands for carbonyl or methylene and Y stands for nitrogen or methine]

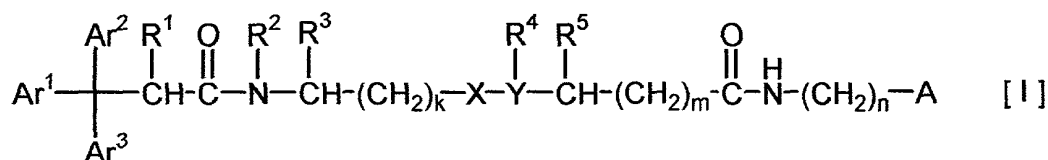
or a salt thereof, to form a compound of the general formula [IV-3]



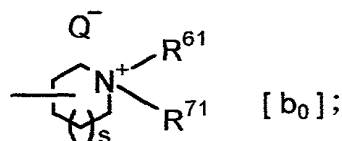
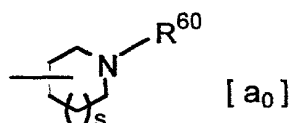
[in which Z^- signifies anion; Ar^{1p} , Ar^{2p} , Ar^{3p} , k, m, n, s, R^{1p} , R^{2p} , R^{3p} , R^{4p} , R^{5p} , R^{71bp} , X and Y have the earlier defined significations]

and if necessary removing protective group(s) and/or exchanging the anion.

23. Treating agents for diseases associated with muscarinic M_3 receptors, which contain as the active ingredient the compounds represented by the general formula [I]



[in which A stands for a group of the following formula [a₀] or [b₀]

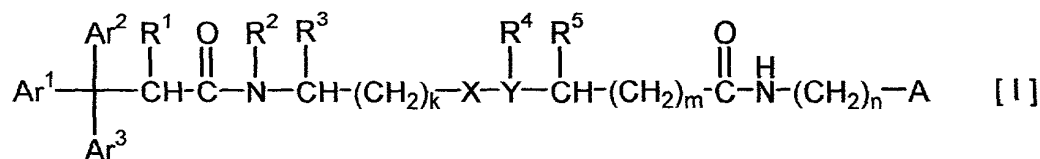


Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ each independently stands for optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl; k means 0 or 1; m, n and s each independently means 0, 1 or 2; R¹ stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl; R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl, or R² and R³, or R⁴ and R⁵, may together stand for, independently of each other, optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino,

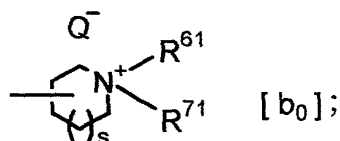
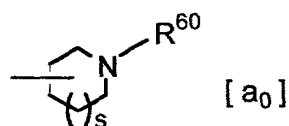
lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by $-R^7$, R^7 standing for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxycarbonyl and imidazolyl; R^{60} stands for hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; R^{61} and R^{71} each independently stands for C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl, or R^{61} and R^{71} may together stand for optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2, 3-epoxytetramethylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy; X stands for carbonyl or methylene; Y stands for nitrogen or methine; and Q^- stands for anion]

or salts thereof.

24. Treating agents for chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases, chronic bronchitis, asthma, chronic respiratory tract obstruction, fibroid lung, pulmonary emphysema and rhinitis; irritable bowel syndrome, convulsive colitis, gastroduodenal ulcer, convulsion or hyperanakinesia of digestive tract, diverticulitis and pain accompanying contraction of smooth muscles of the digestive system; urinary incontinence, urgency and pollakiuria in nervous pollakiuria, neurogenic bladder, nocturnal enuresis, unstable bladder, cystospasm and chronic cystitis; and motion sickness, which agents contain as the active ingredient the compounds represented by the general formula [I]



[in which A stands for a group of the following formula [a₀] or [b₀]



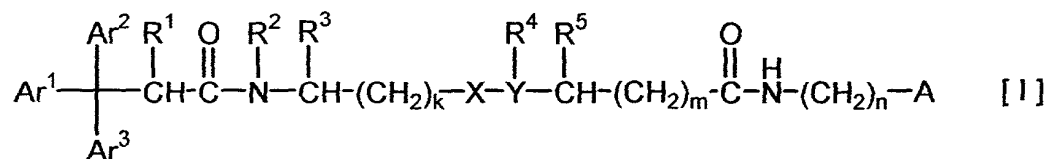
Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ each independently stands for optionally substituted phenyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxyl, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl and di-lower alkylcarbamoyl; k means 0 or 1; m, n and s each independently means 0, 1 or 2; R¹ stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl; R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ each independently stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl and imidazolyl, or R² and R³, or R⁴ and R⁵, may together stand for, independently of each other, optionally substituted trimethylene, propenylene, tetramethylene or 2-butenylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, amino, lower alkoxy, lower alkanoyloxy, lower alkylamino, di-lower alkylamino, (imino-lower alkyl)amino, lower alkanoylamino, lower alkoxycarbonylamino, (lower alkylcarbamoyl)amino,

lower alkylsulfonylamino, guanidino, lower alkoxy carbonyl, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, imidazolyl and a group represented by $-R^7$, R^7 standing for optionally substituted lower alkyl, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, lower alkylcarbamoyl, di-lower alkylcarbamoyl, lower alkoxy carbonyl and imidazolyl; R^{60} stands for hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl; R^{61} and R^{71} each independently stands for C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl whose ring portion may be substituted with lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl or aralkyl, or R^{61} and R^{71} may together stand for optionally substituted trimethylene, tetramethylene, 2-butenylene, pentamethylene, 3-oxapentamethylene or 2, 3-epoxytetramethylene group, the substituent being selected from the group consisting of oxo, hydroxyl, lower alkyl and lower alkoxy; X stands for carbonyl or methylene; Y stands for nitrogen or methine; and Q^- stands for anion]

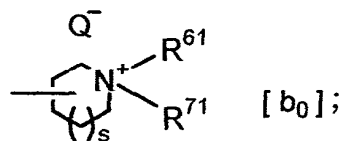
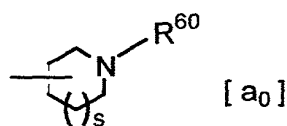
or salts thereof.

ABSTRACT

This invention relates to compounds which are represented by the general formula [I]



[in which A stands for a group of the following formula [a₀] or [b₀]



Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ stand for optionally substituted phenyl; k stands for 0 or 1; m, n and s stand for 0, 1 or 2; R¹ stands for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl; R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ either stand for hydrogen or optionally substituted lower alkyl, or R² and R³, or R⁴ and R⁵ together stand for trimethylene and the like; R⁶⁰ stands for hydrogen, alkyl, or the like; R⁶¹ and R⁷¹ either stand for alkyl and the like, or together stand for trimethylene and the like; X stands for carbonyl or methylene; Y stands for nitrogen or methine; and Q⁻ stands for anion], and the like.

The compounds of the invention exhibit selective antagonism to muscarinic M₃ receptors, and therefore are useful as safe and effective agents showing little side effect, for treating diseases of the respiratory, urinary and digestive systems.

DECLARATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY FOR U. S. PATENT APPLICATION

☒ Original ☐ Supplemental ☐ Substitute ☐ PCT ☐ Design

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that: my residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name; that I verily believe that I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural inventors are named below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled:

Title: NOVEL AMIDE DERIVATIVES

of which is described and claimed in:

☐ the attached specification, or

☐ the specification in the application Serial No. _____ filed _____;
and with amendments through _____ (if applicable), or

☒ the specification in International Application No. PCT/ JP00/04762, filed July 14, 2000 and as amended
on _____ (if applicable).

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment(s) referred to above.

I acknowledge my duty to disclose to the Patent and Trademark Office all information known to me to be material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56.

I hereby claim priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119 (and §172 if this application is for a Design) of any application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and have also identified below any application for patent or inventor's certificate having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed:


COUNTRY	APPLICATION NO.	DATE OF FILING	PRIORITY CLAIMED
Japan	209292/99	July 23, 1999	Yes
Japan	338617/99	November 29, 1999	Yes

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code §120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose information material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56 which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

APPLICATION SERIAL NO.	U.S. FILING DATE	STATUS: PATENTED, PENDING, ABANDONED

And I hereby appoint Michael R. Davis, Reg. No. 25,134; Matthew M. Jacob, Reg. No. 25,154; Warren M. Cheek, Jr., Reg. No. 33,367; Nils Pedersen, Reg. No. 33,145; Charles R. Watts, Reg. No. 33,142; and Michael S. Huppert, Reg. No. 40,268, who together constitute the firm of WENDEROTH, LIND & PONACK, L.L.P., as well as any other attorneys and agents associated with Customer No. 000513, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith.

I hereby authorize the U.S. attorneys and agents named herein to accept and follow instructions from ODAJIMA & CO. as to any action to be taken in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office regarding this application without direct communication between the U.S. attorneys and myself. In the event of a change in the persons from whom instructions may be taken, the U.S. attorneys named herein will be so notified by me.

Direct Correspondence to Customer No.:  000513 PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE	Direct Telephone Calls to: WENDEROTH, LIND & PONACK, L.L.P. 2033 "K" Street, N.W., Suite 800 Washington, D.C. 20006 Phone: (202) 721-8200 Fax: (202) 721-8250
---	--

Full Name of First Inventor	FAMILY NAME SAGARA	FIRST GIVEN NAME Yufu	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY Tsukuba-shi <i>Spx</i>	STATE OR COUNTRY Ibaraki-ken	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP Japan
Post Office Address	c/o Banyu Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. Tsukuba Research Institute, 3, Okubo, Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki 300-2611 JAPAN		
Full Name of Second Inventor	FAMILY NAME UCHIYAMA	FIRST GIVEN NAME Minaho	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY Tsukuba-shi <i>Spx</i>	STATE OR COUNTRY Ibaraki-ken	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP Japan
Post Office Address	c/o Banyu Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. Tsukuba Research Institute, 3, Okubo, Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki 300-2611 JAPAN		
Full Name of Third Inventor	FAMILY NAME NAYA	FIRST GIVEN NAME Akira	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY Tsukuba-shi <i>Spx</i>	STATE OR COUNTRY Ibaraki-ken	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP Japan
Post Office Address	c/o Banyu Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. Tsukuba Research Institute, 3, Okubo, Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki 300-2611 JAPAN		
Full Name of Fourth Inventor	FAMILY NAME KIMURA	FIRST GIVEN NAME Toshifumi	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY Tsukuba-shi <i>Spx</i>	STATE OR COUNTRY Ibaraki-ken	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP Japan
Post Office Address	c/o Banyu Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. Tsukuba Research Institute, 3, Okubo, Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki 300-2611 JAPAN		

5-0

Full Name of Fifth Inventor	FAMILY NAME NUMAZAWA	FIRST GIVEN NAME Tomoshige	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY Tsukuba-shi	STATE OR COUNTRY Ibaraki-ken	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP Japan
Post Office Address	c/o Banyu Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. Tsukuba Research Institute, 3, Okubo, Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki 300-2611 JAPAN		

6-0

Full Name of Sixth Inventor	FAMILY NAME FUJIKAWA	FIRST GIVEN NAME Toru	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY Tsukuba-shi	STATE OR COUNTRY Ibaraki-ken	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP Japan
Post Office Address	c/o Banyu Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. Tsukuba Research Institute, 3, Okubo, Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki 300-2611 JAPAN		

7-0

Full Name of Seventh Inventor	FAMILY NAME OTAKE	FIRST GIVEN NAME Norikazu	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY Tsukuba-shi	STATE OR COUNTRY Ibaraki-ken	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP Japan
Post Office Address	c/o Banyu Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. Tsukuba Research Institute, 3, Okubo, Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki 300-2611 JAPAN		

8-0

Full Name of Eighth Inventor	FAMILY NAME NOGUCHI	FIRST GIVEN NAME Kazuhito	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY Tsukuba-shi	STATE OR COUNTRY Ibaraki-ken	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP Japan
Post Office Address	c/o Banyu Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. Tsukuba Research Institute, 3, Okubo, Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki 300-2611 JAPAN		

Full Name of Ninth Inventor	FAMILY NAME	FIRST GIVEN NAME	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY	STATE OR COUNTRY	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP
Post Office Address			

Full Name of Tenth Inventor	FAMILY NAME	FIRST GIVEN NAME	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY	STATE OR COUNTRY	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP
Post Office Address			

Full Name of Eleventh Inventor	FAMILY NAME	FIRST GIVEN NAME	SECOND GIVEN NAME
Residence & Citizenship	CITY	STATE OR COUNTRY	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP
Post Office Address			

I further declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true, and that all statements on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

1st Inventor Yufu Sagara Date 01/24/2002
2nd Inventor Minaho Uchiyama Date 01/24/2002
3rd Inventor Akira Naya Date 01/24/2002
4th Inventor Toshifumi Kimura Date 01/24/2002
5th Inventor Tomoshige Numazawa Date 01/25/2002
6th Inventor Toru Fujikawa Date 01/25/2002
7th Inventor Norikazu Otake Date 01/24/2002
8th Inventor Kazuhito Noguchi Date 01/23/02
9th Inventor _____ Date _____
10th Inventor _____ Date _____
11th Inventor _____ Date _____

The above application may be more particularly identified as follows:

U.S. Application Serial No. _____ Filing Date _____

Applicant Reference Number _____ Atty Docket No. _____

Title of Invention _____

40034746-032603